



Executive Board

**Thursday, 14 June 2012 2.00 p.m.
The Boardroom, Municipal Building**

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'David W R'.

Chief Executive

**ITEMS TO BE DEALT WITH
IN THE PRESENCE OF THE PRESS AND PUBLIC**

PART 1

Item	Page No
1. MINUTES	
2. DECLARATION OF INTEREST	
Members are reminded of their responsibility to declare any personal or personal and prejudicial interest which they have in any item of business on the agenda no later than when that item is reached and, with personal and prejudicial interests (subject to certain exceptions in the Code of Conduct for Members), to leave the meeting prior to discussion and voting on the item.	
3. CHILDREN YOUNG PEOPLE AND FAMILIES PORTFOLIO	
(A) HALTON ADOPTION SCORECARD	1 - 7
(B) A THREE LOCAL AUTHORITY YOUTH OFFENDING SERVICE - KEY DECISION	8 - 13

*Please contact Angela Scott on 0151 511 8670 or
Angela.scott@halton.gov.uk for further information.
The next meeting of the Committee is on Thursday, 28 June 2012*

Item	Page No
4. HEALTH AND ADULTS PORTFOLIO AND CHILDREN YOUNG PEOPLE AND FAMILIES PORTFOLIO	
(A) AUTISM STRATEGY AND AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW FINAL REPORT	14 - 99
5. PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT PORTFOLIO	
(A) PORTAS PILOT AND HIGH STREET INNOVATION FUND- KEY DECISION	100 - 106
(B) HALTON CORE STRATEGY - POST SUBMISSION CHANGES - KEY DECISION	107 - 256
6. NEIGHBOURHOOD LEISURE AND SPORT PORTFOLIO	
(A) REVIEW OF THE ARTS STRATEGY	257 - 286
PART II	
<p>In this case the Board has a discretion to exclude the press and public and, in view of the nature of the business to be transacted, it is RECOMMENDED that under Section 100A(4) of the Local Government Act 1972, having been satisfied that in all the circumstances of the case the public interest in maintaining the exemption outweighs the public interest in disclosing the information, the press and public be excluded from the meeting for the following items of business on the grounds that it involves the likely disclosure of exempt information as defined in paragraphs 3 and 5 of Part 1 of Schedule 12A to the Act.</p>	
7. CHILDREN YOUNG PEOPLE AND FAMILIES	
(A) FAIRFIELD HIGH SCHOOL SITE AND LAND	287 - 296
8. PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT PORTFOLIO	
(A) RUNCORN TOWN CENTRE REGENERATION	297 - 317

In accordance with the Health and Safety at Work Act the Council is required to notify those attending meetings of the fire evacuation procedures. A copy has previously been circulated to Members and instructions are located in all rooms within the Civic block.

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 14 June 2012

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director, Children and Enterprise

SUBJECT: Adoption Scorecard

PORTFOLIO: Children, Young People and Families

WARDS: Boroughwide

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

1.1 The report sets out Halton's position in relation to the Adoption Scorecard that is due to be published by Department for Education (DfE) in May 2012. Each Local Authority (LA) has been sent a copy of their scorecard which covers the three year period 2008-11 and the Scorecard is attached as Appendix 1.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That

- (1) the Adoption Scorecard be received;**
- (2) Members note that Halton has met both timeliness threshold indicators set by DfE; and**
- (3) Members note that a further report will be submitted to the Children, Young People and Families PPB detailing how the Scorecard and other changes will affect the Adoption Service.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

3.1 In October 2011 the Children in Care and Adoption performance tables were published and the DfE expressed their intention to use data in this area as a means to focus on improving performance.

3.2 The Scorecard is supported by a set of performance thresholds that set out the Government's expectations of LA's on two of the main timeliness indicators, the introduction of these will be staged process, as detailed below:

- Initially the threshold for overall journey (child entering care and moving in with its adoptive family) will be 21 months, moving to 14 months within four years (by 2013-16); and
- The family finding threshold (average time between a local authority receiving court authority to place a child and the LA deciding on a match to an adoptive family) will be set at 7

months initially, moving to four months within four years (by 2013-16).

- 3.3 Ministers do not intend to automatically take intervention action in every local authority that fails to meet the performance thresholds when the scorecards are initially published.
- 3.4 It is anticipated that approximately 50 of the 152 LA's across the Country will not meet these thresholds and some form of monitoring or intervention will take place. For these LA's with performance below one or two of the thresholds, discussions are expected to take place in April and May to agree action plans for improvement.

3.5 Threshold Indicators

- 3.5.1 The graph on the scorecard shows Halton's 2008-11 average performance against the thresholds set for 2010-13 for indicators.
- 3.5.2 The average time between a child entering care and moving in with its adoptive family, for children who have been adopted was 580 days which is better than the threshold set (639 days) and the England average (625 days).
- 3.5.3 The average time between a local authority receiving court authority to place a child and the LA deciding on a match to an adoptive family, for 2008-11 was 97 days which is better performance than the threshold (213 days) and the England average (171 days).
- 3.5.4 This means that Halton has met the thresholds for both timeliness indicators.

3.6 Other indicators

- 3.6.1 For other indicators on the scorecard no thresholds or targets have been set.
- 3.6.2 The number and percentage of children who wait less than the 21 months between entering care and moving in their adoptive family for 2008-11 was 30 children, which equates to 62% of all children who were adopted.
- 3.6.3 For the prospective adopters section, data will not be available until 2014.
- 3.6.4 In the related information section, the number of adoptions from care was 35 in 2008-11 which equated to 20% of all children who left care.
- 3.6.5 The figure for the number of children for whom permanence decisions changed away from adoption for 2008-11 was suppressed due to low numbers.

3.6.6 The adoption of children from ethnic minorities has been rounded and is listed as 0, however, local data suggests that there was one child from an ethnic background adopted in the three year period.

3.6.7 Of the children aged 5 or above who left care, 10 children were adopted, which equated to 8%.

3.6.8 The average length of care proceedings locally between the application being submitted and the case being closed on CAF/CASS national Case Management System (CMS) is 60 weeks. This performance has yet to be validated.

3.6.9 There were 5 children who were awaiting adoption at 31 March 2011 and who had not yet been placed with their adopters.

3.6.10 The data for number of approved prospective adopters at 31 March 2011 will not be available until 2014, however, local data suggests that there were 11 prospective adopters at the end of year.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

4.1 The Government has set challenging thresholds for Local Authorities to meet and work is ongoing within the Directorate to work towards these. However, it is also worth noting that there are a low number of children in the cohorts for each three year period, which will mean that figures in the scorecard can easily be skewed.

4.2 If the Council fails to meet the thresholds set the DfE will take intervention action and it is anticipated that the scorecard will be a limiting judgement in relation to future Children in Care inspections, however, the guidance for this inspection framework has not been released at present.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

5.1 Not applicable.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

As detailed in 4.1 and 4.2 above

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

Not applicable

6.3 A Healthy Halton

Not applicable

6.4 A Safer Halton

Not applicable

6.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

Not applicable

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 As detailed 4.2 above

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 There are no additional equality and diversity issues which have been identified in relation to Adoption as a result of the production of the Scorecard.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Office
Letter to Matt Dunkley	Grosvenor House/Rutland House	Nigel Moorhouse, Operational Director, Children and Families

2012 ADOPTION SCORECARD

Local Authority Scorecard

Halton

LA Number -876

March 2012

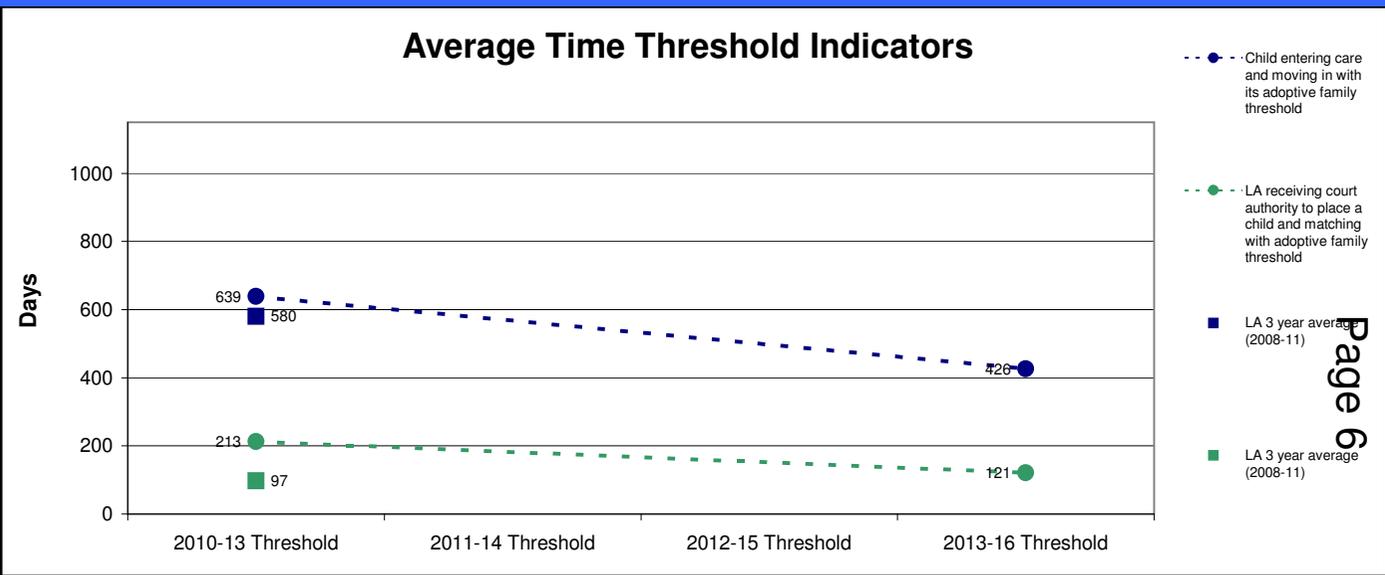
Children, Young People and Families Directorate

Adoption Scorecard

Halton

Children

	Average time between a child entering care and moving in with its adoptive family, for children who have been adopted (days)	Average time between a local authority receiving court authority to place a child and the local authority deciding on a match to an adoptive family (days)	Children who wait less than 21 months between entering care and moving in with their adoptive family (number and %)
LA 3 year average (2008-11)	580	97	30 (62%)
Trend - Improvement from previous year (2010)	↑	n/a	n/a
England 3 year average (2008-11)	625	171	9440 (58%)
Distance from 2010-13 performance threshold	Threshold met	Threshold met	n/a



Prospective Adopters

	The time taken from registration of interest to decision of suitability to adopt (days)	The time taken from receipt of application form to decision of suitability to adopt (days)	The time taken from decision of suitability to adopt to matching with child (days)
LA 3 year average (2008-11)	Data not available until 2014		
England 3 year average (2008-11)	Data not available until 2014		

Related Information

Adoptions from care (number adopted and % leaving care who are adopted)	Number and % of children for whom the permanence decision has changed away from adoption	Adoptions of children from ethnic minority backgrounds (number adopted and % of BME children leaving care who are adopted)	Adoptions of children aged five or over (number adopted and % of children aged 5 or over leaving care who are adopted)	Average length of care proceedings locally (weeks)	Number of children awaiting adoption (as at 31 March 2011)	Number of approved prospective adopters (as at 31 March 2011)
35 (20%)	x (x%)	0 (x%)	10 (8%)	60	5	Data not available
9570 (12%)	1030 (7%)	1590 (7%)	2560 (5%)	52	4290	Data not available

Notes for all indicators:

1. Figures for England prior to 2010 include figures for Cheshire and Bedfordshire, however performance in these former LAs are not shown elsewhere. In 2009, Cheshire Local Authority split into Cheshire East and Cheshire West and Chester. Similarly, Bedf
2. Percentages have been derived from unrounded numerator and denominator figures.
3. Percentages have been rounded to whole numbers but where the numerator was five or less or the denominator was 10 or less, they have been suppressed and replaced by a cross (x).
4. Symbols used:
 - x Figures not shown in order to protect confidentiality.
 - .. Not applicable, i.e. no children in the cohort.
 - Percentages less than 0.5% but greater than 0%

Notes for individual indicators:

	Latest data	Data included in average	When will the next data be available?	Where can I find the numerators and denominators for percentages	Notes
Average time between a child entering care and moving in with its adoptive family, for children who have been adopted (days)					
Indicator A1	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	http://www.education.gov.uk/rsgateway/DB/SFR/s001026/index.shtml The number of children who were adopted can be found in table LAE1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This indicator includes all children adopted in years ending 31 March 2009-11 that were placed for adoption immediately prior to their adoption. 2. Time is calculated between a child starting to be looked after and their placement for adoption. Only children with valid data are included. 3. Figures are rounded to the nearest day.
Average time between a local authority receiving court authority to place a child and the local authority deciding on a match to an adoptive family (days)					
Indicator A2	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	Underlying figures are not currently published	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This indicator includes all children adopted in years ending 31 March 2009-11 that were placed for adoption and on a placement order or freeing order immediately prior to their adoption. 2. Time is calculated between receiving court authority to adopt (granting of placement order/freeing order) and matching with adopters. A time of zero is assigned to children who were matched before court authority was received. 3. Figures are rounded
The number and percentage of children who wait longer than 21 months between entering care and moving in with their adoptive family					
Indicator A3	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	Underlying figures are not currently published	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This indicator includes all children adopted in years ending 31 March 2009-11 that were placed for adoption immediately prior to their adoption <u>and</u> all children with a current adoption plan at 31 March 2011 (excluding those where the decision to adopt has 2. Time is calculated between a child starting to be looked after and their placement for adoption. Only children with valid data are included. Children are flagged if they waited less than 21 months between starting to be looked after and being placed for 4. The denominator is therefore all adopted children who were placed for adoption first <u>and</u> all looked after at 31 March with a current adoption decision.
Adoptions from care (number adopted and percentage leaving care who are adopted)					
Indicator A4	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	http://www.education.gov.uk/rsgateway/DB/SFR/s001026/index.shtml The number of children who were adopted can be found in table LAE1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Only the last occasion on which a child ceased to be looked after in the year has been counted. 2. Figures exclude children looked after under an agreed series of short term placements.
The number and percentage of children for whom the permanence decision has changed away from adoption					
Indicator A5	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	http://www.education.gov.uk/rsgateway/DB/SFR/s001026/index.shtml National figures can be found in table E4	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The denominator includes all children with an adoption decision in years ending 31 March 2009-2011. The numerator includes all children with an adoption decision in years ending 31 March 2009-2011 that had the decision reversed in years ending 31 March
The percentage of black and minority ethnic children leaving care who are adopted					
Indicator A6	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	2010 data: http://www.education.gov.uk/childrenandyoungpeople/families/adoption/b0076713/datapack	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Only the last occasion on which a child ceased to be looked after in the year has been counted. 2. Figures exclude children looked after under an agreed series of short term placements. 3. 'Black and minority ethnic' refers to all non-White children with a known ethnicity. Figures exclude all children where ethnicity was refused or not obtained.
The percentage of children aged 5 or over leaving care who are adopted					
Indicator A7	2011	2009 2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	2010 data: http://www.education.gov.uk/childrenandyoungpeople/families/adoption/b0076713/datapack	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Only the last occasion on which a child ceased to be looked after in the year has been counted. 2. Figures exclude children looked after under an agreed series of short term placements. 3. Age on leaving care.
Average length of care proceedings locally (weeks)					
Indicator A8	2011	2010 2011	Data for 2012 will be available from June 2012	Figures are currently not publicly available	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Figures are provided from the Cafcass national Case Management System (CMS). 2. The unit of measurement is a care application An application can involve multiple children. CMS is a live system and any late entries will be accounted for at the time of 3. Average care duration is calculated from date of care application to the court to date application completed on CMS in the selected time period. Averages are based on care applications completed in the period.
Number of children awaiting adoption					
Indicator A9	2011	2011	Data for 2012 will be available from Autumn 2012	Underlying figures are not currently published	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This indicator includes all children with an adoption plan in year ending 31 March 2011 that were still looked after at 31 March 2011 and who had <u>not</u> been placed for adoption at 31 March 2011.

REPORT TO	Executive Board
DATE:	14 th June 2012
REPORTING OFFICER:	Strategic Director Children and Enterprise
SUBJECT:	A Three Local Authority Youth Offending Service
PORTFOLIO:	Children, Young People and Families
WARDS:	Borough Wide

1.0 PURPOSE OF REPORT

1.1 This report identifies the issues relating to the potential establishment of a three way Youth Offending Service (YOS) for Warrington, Halton, Cheshire West and Chester:

- Outlines the origins of the proposals and the work undertaken to date on developing the YOS proposal.
- Seeks Executive Board approval to move towards a single entity across the 3 local authorities and statutory partner organisation's within Cheshire (Police, Probation).

2.0 RECOMMENDED: That Executive Board

- 1) To approve Halton's engagement with and delivery of the 3 LA YOS.**
- 2) To delegate authority to the Strategic Director, Children and Enterprise, Services, to manage the development and delivery of the 3 LA YOS in consultation with Lead Member, Children and Young People's Service, the Section 151 Officer and the Solicitor to the Council.**

3.0 BACKGROUND

3.1 There are currently two Youth Justice Teams across the Cheshire footprint:

- Halton & Warrington Youth Offending Team (YOT) – serving the both Halton Council and Warrington Council.
- Cheshire Youth Offending Service (YOS) – serving the both Cheshire East Council and Cheshire West & Chester Council.

Warrington and Cheshire East councils currently host these two services. Each service is considered to be high performing by the Youth Justice Board.

- 3.2 Halton and Warrington YOT is a consistently high performing service that has resulted in a significant reduction in the number of first time offenders in the service over the past 3 years:
- 09/10- 460
 - 10/11- 354
 - 11/12- 286
- 3.3 The Chief Executives of Cheshire East, Cheshire West & Chester, Halton and Warrington Councils commissioned a feasibility study on the options for greater collaboration and efficiencies and a possible merger of each of their Youth Justice Services. The driver for this work was:
- A concern about the continued reductions in funding for the service from all partners that could threaten the sustainability of each YOT.
 - Changes in the management and role of Youth Justice Services nationally, which would lead to changes in the profile and activity of Youth Justice Services locally.
- 3.4 An initial phase of exploration took place from July 2010 then further developments nationally and locally prompted a 2nd Phase of the single YOS project. These included:
- Changes in the role and remit of the Youth Justice Board resulting in more local autonomy for each YOS.
 - Legislation to support the creation of Police and Crime Commissioners for each local area, this included one Commissioner across the Cheshire footprint.
 - The establishment of a single Youth Panel for the courts in the Cheshire footprint and further rationalisation of the local courts.
- 3.5 A Project Board was established, on behalf of the four councils, to develop proposals for a single YOS scenario that would provide all statutory partners with an analysis of how this single entity would:
- Improve performance;
 - Increase efficiencies; and
 - Sustain localism.
- 3.6 The four authorities/two YOTs identified and resourced a project manager who has brought valuable capacity to the project to date. Five workstreams were established; each led by one of the local authorities and one by the Youth Justice Board. A Project Board was also established including both YOT Managers and representatives from both Police and Probation. The workstreams presented recommendations to the Project Board, which has enabled the YOS to be modelled.

3.7 In January 2012 Cheshire East withdrew from the proposal to develop a single YOS across the Cheshire footprint. Cheshire West and Chester wanted to continue their involvement and explore a 3 way YOS with Halton and Warrington.

3.8 The model presented in this report is a result of a reassessment of the viability and opportunities presented by bringing together Youth Justice Services across the 3 Local Authorities.

4.0 NATIONAL POLICY AND EXPECTATIONS

4.1 The basis for the establishment of the Youth Offending Service is set out in the Crime and Disorder Act 1998. In summary the Act requires that:

- A Local Authority in co-operation with others must ensure that all youth justice services are available in its area.
- The Police, Probation and Health Services are to co-operate with the Local Authority in discharging its duty to provide services.
- A Youth Offending Service will include specified people and fulfill key tasks and functions as detailed in the act. An annual plan is required by the Youth Justice Board.

4.2 National consultation on the future of the Youth Justice Board has recently concluded. A decision has been made to retain this national body with reduced functions and activity. The Youth Justice Board will retain a role in monitoring the work of local services against 3 National Indicators: the number of young people re-offending; the use of custody; and the numbers of first time entrants into the youth justice system.

5.0 A THREE LOCAL AUTHORITY YOS PROPOSALS

5.1 The model for a 3 LA YOS includes:

- A single set of Performance Measures (3 National Indicators and 4 Local Indicators) reflecting the performance issues across the area.
- A single management team with operational staff retaining the work with young people in each local area.
- A single Partnership Board to govern the service through a Partnership Agreement with all statutory partners.

5.2 The Project Board explored a number of models for a 3 LA YOS. These included a purely collaborative approach across the footprint building on existing practice and maintaining two separate entities. This did not deliver

any savings to partners and was not felt to be sustainable in the longer term when all other YOS partners are moving to single services across the

footprint. e.g. The courts, the Crime and Police Commissioner. A further model was explored where all staff would be managed as part of one organisation, a fully integrated model. This option, whilst delivering savings and bringing opportunities for further joint working across the footprint was not felt to be viable for any one of the LA's involved because of the increased liabilities this would place on one body.

- 5.3 The model and staffing structure outlined in this report has been developed to protect and enhance the delivery of Youth Offending services to young people by maintaining all operational activity at the local level in Halton, Warrington and Cheshire West and Chester. This local work will be managed dedicated senior managers who will have a lead role in each Local Authority in order to provide a consistent approach and knowledge of the crime and youth justice issues in each local area.
- 5.4 Within the proposals, collaborative working and joint initiatives will enable the 3 LA YOS to be more effective in delivering some specialised areas of Youth Justice work. A number of small specialist areas of work will be brought together e.g. substance misuse, work with sex offenders, work with violent offenders, volunteering and mentoring in order to deliver effective work across the footprint. This will protect and secure the long-term viability of these specialist areas of work.
- 5.5 A single court team will also be created to work alongside the single Youth Panel operating across Cheshire Courts. This will bring increased efficiencies and ensure consistencies across the footprint .
- 5.6 A Performance and Business Unit will support the work in the 3 LA YOS and ensure good performance data and information is available to all partners and ensure that the Partnership Board is be able to respond efficiently and effectively to changing demands on the service.
- 5.7 A revised structure will be established to create the new 3 LA YOS involving shared management and shared support services. The Head of Service will then be responsible for reviewing back office arrangements and to further develop collaborative approaches in order to deliver overall savings of 15%.
- 5.8 Developing the new service with CW&C will double the size of the YOS and bring together a range of services including specialist provision. Delivering services over a wider footprint will inevitably mean that specialist provision can be maintained and the new service will future proof provision in Halton and Warrington for some of the most vulnerable young people in the borough's.
- 5.9 A new Partnership Board will be created for the 3 LA YOS replacing the two existing structures: Halton and Warrington Youth Offending Board and Cheshire Youth Justice Board. The new Board will be chaired by one of the Directors' of Children and Young Peoples Services or Senior Officer of the Statutory Partners (Police, Probation). A partnership agreement will ensure the smooth running of YOS.

6.0 **IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES**

6.1 **Children & Young People in Halton**

Ensure the YOT is strengthened and protected through the increased collaboration and remains sustainable. In addition is able to deliver more specialist support to young people.

6.2 **Employment, Learning & Skills in Halton**

N/A

6.3 **A Healthy Halton**

N/A

6.4 **A Safer Halton**

Continues to contribute to the reduction in the number of first time offenders in the service over the past 3 years:

7.0 **FINANCIAL CONSIDERATIONS**

7.1 The Project brief outlined an expectation that a 3 LA YOS should achieve 15% savings for each partner funding the service. However work undertaken as part of the project using the Youth Justice Board cost tool analysis showed that the direct work being undertaken with young people in both services is extremely cost effective whilst management costs were slightly higher than the national average.

7.2 The Project Board asked that models for a 3 LA YOS be developed making savings from management and back office costs in order to protect front line delivery of these services to Young People. During 2011/12 Cheshire YOS and Halton & Warrington YOT have achieved savings and the new service will be expected to deliver further savings during 2012/13 to secure an overall 15% saving for each statutory partner.

7.3 In the last year both Halton and Warrington Local Authorities have taken savings from the YOT as a result of budget reductions across Children's Services. The sustainability of high quality provision will inevitably be a risk if this trend continues and particularly for the provision of specialist services for small numbers of high risk offenders.

7.4 No savings will be available to the LA's or partner organisations until all liabilities have been funded. This will include any redundancy and pension costs.

7.5 Staff will be retained on their existing contracts with the two employing Local Authorities and statutory partners and will be seconded to the YOS. This means there will be no increased liability for any partner.

8.0 RISK ANALYSIS

8.1 Risks associated with moving to a 3 LA YOS have been fully explored throughout the project through the workstreams and considered by the Project Board. The financial risks are highlighted in this report. The Project Board has agreed to create a Joint Officer group to support the transition to the single YOS and address any shared service issues that may arise. The Youth Justice Board is in full support of the move to a 3 LA YOS.

9.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

9.1 The maintenance of services for young people at risk of the poorest outcomes is the primary focus of this proposal. An Equality Impact assessment has been undertaken in relation to these proposals.

10.0 REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

10.1 The move to 3 LA YOS will secure and safeguard high quality services for young people, embrace sub regional collaboration and deliver financial efficiencies.

11.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

11.1 Consideration was given to 4 LA YOS including Cheshire East. Cheshire East have now agreed separate arrangements.

12.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

12.1 The implementation date of the 3 LA YOS is September 2012.

13.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Minutes of the One YOS meetings 2011 to 2012	Rutland House	Ann McIntyre

REPORT TO:	Executive Board
DATE:	14 th June 2012
REPORTING OFFICER:	Strategic Director, Communities
PORTFOLIO:	Health and Adults; Children, Young People and Families
SUBJECT:	Autism Strategy and Autism Scrutiny Review Final Report
WARD(S)	Borough-wide

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 To present the Board with the Autism Strategy 2012-2016 and the Autism Scrutiny Review final report.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That the Board:

- i) Approve the Autism Strategy (Appendix 1); and
- ii) Note the contents of the Autism Scrutiny Review and approve the recommendations in the associated Action Plan (Appendix 2).

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

- 3.1 In 2009, the National Audit Office presented its report 'Supporting People with Autism through Adulthood', which made a number of recommendations for improving outcomes for people with autism. The Government then passed the Autism Act 2009, with an accompanying Autism Strategy: 'Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives 2010' and a first year delivery plan. The publication of statutory guidance "Implementing 'Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives' Statutory Guidance for local authorities and NHS organisations to support implementation of the autism strategy" followed in December 2010. There will be a formal review of this guidance in 2013.
- 3.2 In response to the publication of statutory guidance:
- an Autism Strategy (supported by Halton Borough Council, NHS Merseyside and 5Boroughs Partnership NHS Trust for Halton has been developed; and
 - a Member-led Scrutiny Review took place.

Autism Strategy

The compulsory actions within the guidance have been included in Halton's Autism Strategy and applied to both children's and adult's services, to ensure that the strategy is inclusive of people of all ages.

- 3.3 The Strategy builds upon work that has already taken place across children's and adult services, health services and the 5 Boroughs and assesses how this can be improved upon, resulting in a number of agreed action points to be progressed. It has been developed in consultation with representatives from the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group. There are representatives on this group from Adult Services, Children's Services, Health Services, 5 Boroughs and a Parent/Carer representative. The Autism Strategy will initially be reviewed after six months of implementation and at 12 monthly intervals thereafter. The Strategy will be delivered within the available resources.
- 3.4 The recent National Autistic Society review of the Councils services has been instrumental in shaping the Autistic Strategy.

3.5 *Scrutiny Review*

The Scrutiny Review was commissioned by the Health Policy and Performance Board. A Scrutiny Review working group was established with six Members from the Board, a Principal Policy Officer from the People and Communities Policy team, Practice Manager for Autism, Principal and Practice Managers from the Positive Behaviour Support Service.

- 3.6 The Scrutiny Review provided a good opportunity to look at our baseline information in supporting people with autism spectrum conditions living in Halton. The report makes a series of recommendations under each separate area of evidence that was scrutinised and have been collated into an Action Plan for ease of reference and monitoring by the Principal Manager for Commissioning. The Scrutiny Review also played a key role in shaping the Autism Strategy and in particular the section on Education and Employment.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

- 4.1 The Autism Strategy has been developed in order to ensure that the statutory guidance issued, following the publication of Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives, is implemented successfully by health and social care services in Halton.
- 4.2 Following the development of the Strategy and Scrutiny Review an assessment has taken place on associated policies and no amendments are required.

5.0 **OTHER/FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS**

5.1 The majority of recommendations could be met from within the existing resources although some required additional resources. Where recommendations could not be met from existing resources, these would be considered in the context of the Council's wider budget review process.

5.2 In terms of the Scrutiny Review there were no financial implications identified as part of the recommendations.

6.0 **IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES**

6.1 **Children & Young People in Halton**

The Autism Strategy will ensure that children and adults living in Halton will have access to effective/appropriate diagnosis, assessment and services for supporting those with autism spectrum conditions. All statutory guidance will be adhered to in order to ensure that services are fit for purpose.

6.2 **Employment, Learning & Skills in Halton**

The Scrutiny Review recommendations link in to developing a culture where learning is valued and raise skill levels throughout the adult population and in the local workforce; and promoting and increasing the employability of local people and tackle barriers to employment to get more people into work.

6.3 **A Healthy Halton**

The Autism Strategy will ensure that children and adults living in Halton will have access to effective/appropriate diagnosis, assessment and services for supporting those with autism spectrum conditions. All statutory guidance will be adhered to in order to ensure that services are fit for purpose.

The Scrutiny Review recommendations link to:

- understanding fully the causes of ill health in Halton and act together to improve the overall health and well-being of local people;
- to lay firm foundations for a healthy start in life and support those most in need in the community by maximising and promoting autonomy;
- to promote a healthy living environment and lifestyles to protect the health of the public, sustain individual good health and well-being and help prevent and efficiently manage illness; and
- to reduce the burden of disease in Halton by concentrating on

lowering the rates of cancer and heart disease, mental ill health and diabetes and addressing the health needs of older people.

The Autism Strategy will be going forward to Health Policy and Performance Board in September 2012.

The Autism Scrutiny Review was approved by the Health Policy and Performance Board on 6th March 2012.

6.4 A Safer Halton

None identified.

6.5 Halton’s Urban Renewal

None identified.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

7.1 The Autism Strategy is a statutory requirement issued by the Government and therefore must be implemented fully. Failure to do so may lead the authority to be liable to a judicial review of services, unless the local authority can provide a reason why implementation of the statutory guidance has not been possible.

7.2 The Scrutiny Review report and recommendations support the Council’s strategic priority of Improving Health. Taking on board the recommendations from the report will be a positive step to improving Autism services for people in Halton.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

8.1 The implementation of the Autism Strategy and the recommendations from the Autism Scrutiny Review will help to improve services in Halton for people on the Autistic Spectrum Condition.

9.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

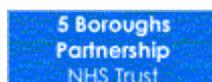
Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Autism Act 2009	People and Communities Policy Team	Katy Rushworth
Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives 2010	People and Communities Policy Team	Katy Rushworth
Implementing Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives	People and Communities Policy Team	Katy Rushworth

Communities Directorate and Children & Enterprise Directorate



AUTISM STRATEGY

2012 - 2016



CONTENTS

Section	Title	Page
PREFACE		4
SECTION ONE		
Autism in context	The national context	5
	The local context	7
SECTION TWO		
Planning & Commissioning	Understanding the local population	10
	Leadership	12
	Diagnosis	14
	Assessment and Care Management	18
	Transition Planning	21
	Commissioning Services	23
	Training for Staff	24
SECTION THREE		
Support	Involving and supporting families	26
	Support with accommodation	31
	Support with friendships and relationships	33
SECTION FOUR		
Education, Wellbeing & Health	Education and Employment	35
	Staying healthy	37
	Information	38
REFERENCES		40

APPENDICES	NUMBER
Development Plan	1
Glossary of Terms	2

INFORMATION SHEET

Service area	All operational teams
Date effective from	June 2012
Responsible officer(s)	Operational Director, Commissioning and Complex Needs Practice Manager, Autism Policy Officer, People and Communities Policy Team
Date of review(s)	December 2012
Status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mandatory (all named staff must adhere to guidance) • Optional (procedures and practice can vary between teams) 	Mandatory
Target audience	Children's Services Adult Services
Date of committee/SMT decision	
Related document(s)	Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives 2010
Superseded document(s)	N/A
File reference	



Cllr Marie Wright

PREFACE

Cllr Marie Wright is the portfolio holder for Adult Social Care and Chair of the Adult Learning Disability Partnership Board.

Autism refers to a range or spectrum of lifelong developmental conditions that can affect individuals in many ways but share common characteristics, including difficulty with social interaction and communication and a lack of flexibility in thinking and behaving. It can be known by many different names including Autism Spectrum Conditions, Autism Spectrum Disorders, Autism or Aspergers. For the purposes of this strategy the term Autism Spectrum Conditions shall be used to refer to all associated conditions.

Some recent studies have estimated prevalence at about 90 people per 10,000 (or nearly 1%) in the population, or even higher. These estimates are much higher than previously thought with some people concluding that the condition is becoming more common, and suggesting that environmental factors are responsible, although these have never been conclusively identified. The prevailing view is however, that higher prevalence estimates are due to a broadening of the definition of autism, and increased awareness amongst professionals and the population as a whole, and that complicated genetic factors are largely responsible for the conditions.

For a borough the size of Halton, the prevalence estimates would mean there may be about 1090 people with an autism spectrum condition. Of these, many are likely to be able to live relatively independently or without any additional support, whilst around 240 may be expected to have an IQ below 70 (i.e. associated with a learning disability) and likely to require a lifetime of specialist care.

Due to the wide range of conditions covered within the autism spectrum, people with the conditions are likely to access a wide range of local services. In developing a local Autism Strategy, this presents a particular challenge as a coordinated response to autism must necessarily cut across traditional service boundaries.

As a range of conditions that affect so many people directly, and many more indirectly, it is not surprising that they have attracted much attention from national policy makers. In 2009, the National Audit Office presented its report *Supporting People with Autism through Adulthood* which made a number of recommendations for improving outcomes for people with autism. More recently, the Government passed the Autism Act (2009) with an accompanying Autism Strategy, *Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives* (2010) and a first year Delivery Plan, with publication of statutory guidance for health and social care and full delivery plan in December 2010. There will be formal review of this guidance in 2013.

Locally, in 2008, Halton Borough Council and NHS Halton and St Helens commissioned the National Autistic Society to produce a strategic review of local services and make recommendations for improvement. In 2012, the Local Authority asked for further recommendations to be made to extend the progress already made following the review

in 2008. The review in 2012 included both children's and adult's service and resulted in a detailed report with recommendations being produced by the National Autistic Society.

There is no attempt in this Strategy to summarise the various requirements and recommendations contained within the above documents, but they have nevertheless influenced the content of this Strategy, which attempts to identify important areas for consideration, reviews where we are up to in Halton, how we may improve, and how we intend to do this over the next three years.

SECTION ONE: AUTISM IN CONTEXT

TITLE: NATIONAL CONTEXT

According to the National Strategy Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives, the Government's vision is that "All adults with autism are able to live fulfilling and rewarding lives within a society that accepts and understands them. They can get a diagnosis and access support if they need it and they can depend on mainstream public services to treat them fairly as individuals, helping them make the most of their talents."

The statutory guidance published by Department of Health in December 2010 following Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives, for health and social care services includes information on the following:-

- The provision of relevant services for the purpose of diagnosing autistic spectrum conditions in adults
- The identification of adults with such conditions
- The assessment of the needs of adults with such conditions for relevant services
- Planning in relation to the provision of relevant services to persons with autistic spectrum conditions as they move from being children to adults
- Other planning in relation to the provision of relevant services to adults with autistic spectrum conditions
- The training of staff who provide relevant services to adults with such conditions
- Local arrangements for leadership in relation to the provision of relevant services to adults with such conditions

For the purposes of this strategy, autism is defined as a lifelong condition that affects how a person communicates with and relates to other people. It also affects how a person makes sense of the world around them. The three main areas of difficulty, which all people with autism share, are known as the "triad of impairments", which are:

- Social communication (e.g. problems using and understanding verbal and non-verbal language, such as gestures, facial expressions and tone of voice)
- Social interaction (e.g. problems in recognising and understanding other people's feelings and managing their own)
- Social imagination (e.g. problems in understanding and predicting other people's intentions and behaviours and imagining situations outside their own routine)

[Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010]

The Government's vision for people with autism over the next three years means:-

- Having a right to receive an assessment of need from social services
- Getting the same opportunities for education and further education as everyone else
- Being supported to get a job and stay in work

- Being able to choose where to live just like anyone else
- Having relationships and social networks
- Having their health needs properly met in a way which is appropriate for someone with autism
- Being safe from hate crime and discrimination
- Living in a society where people understand, respect and accommodate difference
- Receiving support to live independently as appropriate

[Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010]

SECTION ONE: AUTISM IN CONTEXT

TITLE: LOCAL CONTEXT

A VISION for HALTON

Halton will be a thriving and vibrant Borough where people can learn and develop their skills; enjoy a good quality of life with good health; a high quality, modern urban environment; the opportunity for all to fulfil their potential; greater wealth and equality; sustained by a thriving business community; and a safer, stronger and more attractive neighbourhood. *[Halton Borough Council Corporate Plan 2006-2011]*

Halton's Strategic Partnership Board has set out five strategic priorities for the Borough, in its Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-2026, which will help to build a better future for Halton:

- **A Healthy Halton**
- **Environment and Regeneration in Halton**
- **Employment learning and skills in Halton**
- **Children & Young people in Halton**
- **A Safer Halton**

Our vision in Halton is that young people with social and health care needs should enjoy the same rights to citizenship and inclusion as all young people.

Support services should therefore be directed towards helping young people to develop choices that are right for them, to realise their full potential, and participate fully in the wider community.

In the sections that follow, the vision is broken down into specific aims. In each section, there is an evaluation of how far these aims are being met already, and how we can improve further, leading to specific actions, which are summarised in the Development Plan in Appendix One.

POPULATION AND SOCIO ECONOMIC DATA

Halton is a largely urban area of 119,500 people. Its two biggest settlements are Widnes and Runcorn that face each other across the River Mersey, 10 miles upstream from Liverpool. The population of Halton was in decline for over a decade, but has recently started to increase. Between 1991 and 2002 the estimated Borough population decreased by 6,500 people from 124,800 to 118,300.

At present, Halton has a younger population than the national and regional averages. The mid-year population estimates, population projections for under 19's, in Halton shows that there has been an increase in the numbers in the 0-4 year olds, the 5-9 and 15-19 year old populations have remained static over the past few years but the 10-14 year old population has decreased. Population projections show that the 10-14 and 15-19 population is predicted to decrease in the next few years.

However, Halton mirrors the national picture of an ageing population, with projections indicating that the population of the Borough will age at a faster rate than the national average. In 1996, 12.9% of the total population were aged 65 and over, by 2006 this had

increased to nearly 14% and by 2015 this is projected to have increased to 17%, which could have a significant impact on the need for health and social care.

The population is predominantly white (98.8%) with relatively little variation between wards. However, in recent years, it has seen a small influx of Eastern European (Polish & Slovakian) migrants.

ASSESSMENT OF NEED

The following tables details actual and projected areas of need, based on young people currently receiving or likely to need Adult Social Care, those expected to leave school in 2010 – 2012 and those currently receiving services from Connexions for clarity and future service and commissioning development. Please also refer to section two of this strategy: Assessment and Care Management for more detailed information relating to people with autism in Halton. The Positive Behaviour Support Service has been working jointly with the Practice Manager for Autism within the local authority, regarding several key areas such as training, Positive Behaviour Support Service development, family liaison and organisation links to support those with autism spectrum conditions and their families, as well being active members of the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group and training sub group.

Young People receiving or likely to need adult social care (Financial Year):

	2010/11	2011/12
Turning 18 – still in school	6	9
Leaving school (may go on to college)	7	7
Leaving college	8	Not known

Young People expected to Leave School in 2010 - 2012

School year beginning	ASC (inc Aspergers)	Physical Disability	Learning Disability	Social & Communication Difficulties for Severe Learning Disabilities
Sept 10	27	9	27	1
Sept 11	36	13	28	3
Sept 12	26	9	21	3

Young People 19-25 with Learning Disability & Difficulties currently receiving services from Connexions

ASD	Age 19	Age 20	Age 21	Age 22	Age 23	Age 24	Total
Aspergers Syndrome	6	2	2	1	0	0	11
Autism	1	1	0	5	1	0	8
Total	7	3	2	6	1	0	19

PHYSICAL	Age 19	Age 20	Age 21	Age 22	Age 23	Age 24	Total
Cerebral Palsy	1	0	1	1	0	1	4
Cystic Fibrosis	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
Head Injuries	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Hydrocephalus	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
Other Mobility Problems	1	1	0	1	0	0	3

Restricted Growth (Achondraplasia)	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
Spina Bifida	2	0	0	0	0	1	3
Wheelchair User	0	2	0	1	2	1	6
Total	6	5	1	3	2	3	20

SLD	Age 19	Age 20	Age 21	Age 22	Age 23	Age 24	Total
Severe Learning Difficulties	10	8	2	5	2	1	28
Total	10	8	2	5	2	1	28

[Source of Figure Tables: Halton Multi-Agency Transition Strategy for Young People aged 14-25, 2010-2013]

DEPRIVATION

Deprivation is a major determinant of health. Lower income levels often lead to poor levels of nutrition, poor housing conditions, and inequitable access to healthcare and other services.

Deprivation, measured using the English Index of Multiple Deprivation (IMD) 2007, ranks Halton as the 30th most deprived authority in England (a ranking of 1 indicates that an area is the most deprived). This is 3rd highest in Merseyside, behind Knowsley and Liverpool, and 10th highest in the North West: St Helens (47th), Wirral (60th) and Sefton (83rd) are way down the table compared to Halton.

The 2007 IMD shows that deprivation in Halton is widespread with 57,958 people (48% of the population) in Halton living in 'Super Output Areas' (SOA's) that are ranked within the most deprived 20% of areas in England.

In terms of Health and Disability, the IMD identifies 53 SOA's (Super Output Areas) that fall within the top 20% most health deprived nationally and that approximately 40,000 people (33% of the population) live in the top 4% most health deprived areas in England. At ward level, Windmill Hill is the most deprived area in terms of health. However, health deprivation is highest in an SOA (Super Output Areas) within Castlefields, ranked 32nd most deprived nationally.

HEALTH

Health is also a key determinant of a good quality of life and the first priority of Halton's Community Strategy states that 'statistics show that health standards in Halton are amongst the worst in the country and single it out as the aspect of life in the Borough in most urgent need of improvement'.

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: UNDERSTANDING THE LOCAL POPULATION

AIMS

- Local commissioners have accurate data on the numbers of people with autism in the area, enabling them to identify need, plan capacity and commission appropriate services

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

We know from national studies that a high proportion of people with moderate or severe learning disabilities are likely to have conditions within the autism spectrum, often associated with other conditions such as epilepsy. These people, due to their need for lifetime care and support, are likely to be known to social care services, although it does not necessarily follow that proper diagnosis has taken place, needs are well understood, and appropriate service responses are in place.

It is also clear from national studies that the majority of people with conditions on the autism spectrum have average or above average intelligence. Many of these are unlikely to be in contact with social care services, either because they have no wish nor need for such services or they have not been eligible for learning disability or mental health services. This complicates the task of understanding the local population.

For children, this is being tackled through the Early Years and the School Age Pathways, which bring multi-disciplinary resources to bear on children and young people, including diagnosis and post diagnostic support. Children may be identified as having special educational needs. In some cases, the child under the graduated approach of special educational needs, will have support from their school setting and in some cases, enhanced provision or a statement of special educational needs. Additionally children whose needs cannot be met in mainstream school, can be supported by resource based provision or special school. Whilst a child/young person is supported through the diagnostic pathway other services and support will be offered appropriate to their assessed needs. If a child does not meet the criteria for an Autism Diagnosis appropriate support and/or services will be offered depending on the identified needs.

Although there is no register of adults with disabilities in Halton, in order to increase understanding within Adult Services, an exercise has taken place to identify people known to services who either have a diagnosis of autism, or who present with typical features of the condition.

Halton's Children Services do hold a register of disabled children but as it is a voluntary "register", it does not represent a complete list of disabled children living within the Borough and does not yet contain specific information relating to diagnosis for each child.

Over the last few years, information sharing as part of the 14-25 Transition process has improved and with better information being available about children and young people, this has the potential to inform adult services and ensure an improved service response.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Complete audit survey of adults to establish how many have a diagnosis of autism or who present with typical features of the condition
- Year on year improvements in information as young people identified and tracked
- Information on higher functioning autism – are we missing people where there is a need to reduce social isolation, prevent mental health difficulties, improve access into work, provide appropriate housing, and offer information and support for carers?

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Borough-wide school initiative called Comparison, Analysis of Special Pupil Attainment (CASPA) for all schools to be able to identify the small steps of progress of pupils that enables targeting and tracking. A model of a virtual school is adopted to track a child or young person's progress informing commissioning and service delivery.
- Over the next two years, we will track cohorts of young people leaving school as a way of increasing understanding of response to autism, and in particular higher functioning autism.
- Identify lead officer(s) to explore how information relating to service users with autism spectrum conditions is tracked in both Children's Services and Adult Services e.g. how information is recorded on Carefirst and Tribal and how accurate it is.

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: LEADERSHIP

AIMS

- A senior manager within the Authority has responsibility for leading a strategic approach to autism across all its parts
- Local stakeholder representatives are brought together in a group to set a clear direction for improving services for people with autism

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

During 2009, an Autism Stakeholders Group and a Strategy Group were formed in the wake of a report commissioned from the National Autistic Society to review local services. Various working groups have been meeting to look in more detail at some of the areas covered by the report. The working groups established from the Autism Stakeholders group were focusing on the following areas:-

1. **Workforce Planning – Training & Development** – To look at person centred approaches, informing staff/workforce, specialist training and auditing staff knowledge and skills
2. **Commissioning in Transition** – To look at the 5 year plan to find out the numbers coming through transition and to feed back to the stakeholder group. Collate numbers on how many people across all services are on the spectrum and how to meet their needs
3. **Meaningful Employment** – To look at the education pathway and meaningful employment opportunities.

It was recognised that lead officers needed to be identified to carry forward the work. For the working groups, the following lead officers were identified:

Workforce Planning - Training and Development – Learning and Development Manager

Commissioning in Transition – Divisional Manager, Independent Living

Meaningful Employment – Divisional Manager, Community Services

The Autism Stakeholder Group was established in order to focus on the following priority areas:-

- Support the delivery of a workforce across all sectors in Halton that is responsive to the needs of people with autism spectrum conditions
- Deliver greater opportunities for full social inclusion for this group of people
- Ensure that younger people with autism spectrum conditions receive a smooth and seamless transition into adulthood
- Develop and promote a range of information and advice for people with autism spectrum conditions in a range of formats
- Advise the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategy group about current issues in Halton for people with autism spectrum conditions
- Ensure that services which are commissioned for people with autism spectrum conditions are of the highest quality and meet clear outcomes

- Ensure that carers of people with autism spectrum conditions are fully supported and provided with effective information
- Research local needs and development options and report these to the strategic group

In order to ensure work on the priority areas was progressed, the following functions of the Stakeholder Group were agreed:-

- To develop and implement a workforce training plan across all sectors
- To develop and implement a quality outcomes, learning and performance monitoring framework for autism spectrum conditions
- To develop specific information in a range of formats, which meets the needs of people with autism spectrum conditions and their carers
- To monitor the implementation of transition into adulthood processes to ensure that younger people continue to receive services that meet their needs
- To develop a range of suitable employment, education, training and voluntary opportunities for people with autism spectrum conditions
- To develop and implement a communication process with people with autism spectrum conditions and their carers, to ensure that their views are made fully known to the strategic group

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Link to National Autistic Society Review 2012 recommendations for both children's and adults services
- Refresh Autism Group(s). The Autism Stakeholder and Strategic Group to merge in order to ensure a cohesive approach to service delivery across children and adults services. The merged groups to be known as the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group.

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- The local authority lead professional – Operational Director for Complex Needs, to continue to chair the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group meetings and ensure this group meets on a quarterly basis to keep abreast of all developments in this area.
- The Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group to agree and implement the Halton Autism Strategy 2011-2014
- The lead professional and members of the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group to decide the governance arrangements for the group regarding where it should report into.
- Embracing and implementing the recommendations received from the National Autistic Society review of the authority

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: DIAGNOSIS

AIMS

- There is a clear pathway to diagnosis of Autism Spectrum Conditions for both children and adults that meets NICE guidance

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

The current pathways for diagnosis for autism spectrum conditions are:

- 1) Children's Early Years Pathway
- 2) Children's School Aged Pathway
- 3) Adults with a learning disability via the learning disability health services provided by the 5 Boroughs Partnership NHS Foundation Trust
- 4) Adults without a learning disability are referred to Merseycare NHS Trust

For people who are currently known to children's services, these cases are managed through the transition process with full involvement from adult services. The local agreement is that all people managed through this process are referred to adult mental health services as they reach adulthood, so that a full assessment of their needs as adults can be completed. The picture is more complex for adults who have not been diagnosed with an autistic spectrum condition in childhood, and who may have a range of additional needs as a result. Currently, they can be referred into a range of services and it is not consistent which service area will be responsible for their care management.

In order to provide more clarity around the pathways for diagnosis, a number of work streams have been undertaken across Children and Adult Services in Halton in order to strengthen the pathways already in place. In the Children and Enterprise Directorate of Halton Borough Council, work has already been undertaken to develop and implement an Early Years diagnostic pathway and a School Years diagnostic pathway for children with autism spectrum conditions.

In 2005, a working party of professionals developed a School Aged Diagnostic Pathway for pupils with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions. This pathway, whilst still in draft form, encompasses all stages in the code of practice and highlights how pupils with Social Communication (SC) and Autism Spectrum Conditions (ASC) can be supported. The aims of the working party were:-

- To develop a pathway for school aged pupils with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions
- To agree a common definition of Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions
- To audit current knowledge skills and good practice within Halton
- To examine and share current systems and networks, methods of referral and assessment between agencies
- To highlight training and development needs of Halton Borough Council staff working with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions school aged pupils

- To highlight resources and provision for pupils with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions at each stage of their education with a particular emphasis on any stage of transition for example, nursery to reception, key stage 1 to key stage 2, primary/secondary transition, post 16 transition

Since 2005, a pilot that encompasses a working group have been developing a multi-agency pathway for referral and assessment of school-aged children with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions. The aims of the developed pathway are:-

- To continue to provide a co-ordinated and planned referral and assessment route in Halton for school aged pupils
- To facilitate a better understanding between agencies about their respective roles and support systems
- To highlight and identify resources, training needs and facilities for those people working with and supporting pupils with Autism Spectrum Conditions and Social Communication
- To fit in with the Health strategic priorities and Halton Borough Council's Children and Young People's Plan
- To ensure that those pupils with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Condition difficulties, receive appropriate support within their respective school and home settings
- To continue to provide a link with the early years pathway for Autism Spectrum Conditions and Social Communication difficulties which already exists within Halton
- To continue to provide information and links and support for families in Halton of Children with Social Communication and Autism Spectrum Conditions

In relation to adults there are currently two pathways for diagnosis. The first is for those with a learning disability or autism spectrum condition which is part of the specialised health services, provided by the 5 Boroughs Partnership NHS Foundation Trust. The second is for individuals who may have an Autism Spectrum Condition or Aspergers Syndrome, where a funding request is made by GPs to the PCT, prior to a referral being made to a specialist team in Liverpool. Over the past two years, there have been between 10-12 requests per annum for Aspergers assessments. The assessment provides a diagnosis and recommendations concerning areas of life where extra support may be required. A pilot project has been established by the 5 Boroughs Partnership, which is offering non-learning disability diagnosis on a spot purchase basis.

A half day workshop was set up in August 2011, to start the process of developing a clinical pathway to address the needs of people with autism spectrum conditions. The aim of the workshop was to produce a suggested best practice clinical pathway for pan-borough discussion, with the possibility of considering its future implementation and impact of coordinated commissioning, service development and workforce planning. This workshop is only the start of this process and does not represent a final agreed model. The stakeholders invited to attend the clinical pathway workshop included representatives from:

- St Helens
- Knowsley
- Halton
- Warrington
- Individuals with a diagnosis of an autism spectrum condition
- Carer group representatives

- Commissioners (social care and health)
- Child and Adolescent Mental Health Services (CAMHS) health professionals
- Transition
- Positive Behaviour Support Service
- Care Management
- Adult Learning Disability Services
- Adult Mental Health Services

It was intended that the pathway emerging from this would serve as a useful benchmark against which local services and current provision within each borough can be compared and service needs highlighted and identified as necessary areas requiring further development.

Elements of the clinical pathway, which were discussed at the workshop included:-

- Routes of referral (e.g. self versus professional body)
- Triage requirements (e.g. screening measures made available)
- Pre-assessment support/advice
- Post-assessment support (immediate from assessment team)
- Assessment time-frames and details of content
- Post-assessment support (longer-term individual/systematic support)

It was agreed at the workshop that the proposed clinical pathway produced from the workshop, should be shared with the Autism Strategy Groups within each borough and comments sought regarding:

- Structure and content, highlighting areas of agreement or concern
- Mapping of current links and/or services within each locality that map onto this model
- Identification of current local services that exceeds the model presented

Following the consultation process with each of the local Autism Strategy Groups, all responses received are to be collated and information disseminated to interested parties, with the potential for a further workshop to be scheduled. (Clinical Pathways and Autism Spectrum Conditions: Summary of outcomes from a half-day workshop, Dr Alistair L. Barrowcliff – Consultant Clinical Psychologist/Lead Clinician, 5 Boroughs Partnership NHS Foundation Trust, 31st August 2011)

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Complete school years pathway
- Review adult diagnostic pathway following the publication of the NICE Clinical Guide

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

Halton must ensure there is a clear pathway to diagnosis in our local area, therefore, we must:

- Finalise the School Years pathway for children with adherence to NICE guidance for Children 2011

- Agree and implement a revised adult diagnostic pathway once NICE have published their clinical guide in 2012
- Establish a framework to ensure that if a child or adult is diagnosed with autism, they will be offered an assessment of their needs, regardless of their IQ and their carers will be informed of their right to a carers assessment
- Staff working in health and social care are able to identify potential signs of autism and understand how to make reasonable adjustments in their behaviour, communication and services for children and adults with autism spectrum conditions [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: ASSESSMENT AND CARE MANAGEMENT

AIMS

- A route to assessment of need for all people with Autism Spectrum Conditions
- Assessors are competent to deal with Autism Spectrum Conditions
- Needs of people with Autism Spectrum Conditions are fully recognised

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

In response to concerns that people with Autism Spectrum Conditions may fall between services and fail to receive appropriate attention, a local protocol has been agreed whereby people with Autism Spectrum Conditions presenting for assessment will be directed towards mental health services unless it is clear that the person has a learning disability, in which case the Adults Learning Disability Team will assume responsibility.

Due to Halton being a relatively small local authority in terms of the size of population in the borough, it is not felt that the best use of resources would be to set up a separate specialist team, to specialise in supporting people with autism spectrum conditions. It is felt that a more appropriate use of resources would be to have specialists within teams, who have received relevant training and support to have sufficient awareness of autism spectrum conditions, to provide an appropriate level of service to individuals.

In light of the personalisation agenda, it is imperative that the needs of individuals with autism spectrum conditions are taken into account in this planning process. In Halton, the staff responsible for completing the supported assessment questionnaires and offering support planning, have been offered autism spectrum condition awareness training. The introduction of an Initial Assessment Team to be based at the Contact Centre, will ensure that the first point contact will provide better signposting and advice to people accessing services and to those who do not meet the eligibility criteria of Fair Access to Care Services. Health Action Plans also help to identify associated health needs and will further allow better support planning for the future. Work with transition cases starts from 14 years and these cases are tracked by various joint panels. Best practice has shown that starting to engage early with individuals has the best results.

Eligibility criteria for Halton Borough Council is currently set to address the needs for those with moderate, substantial or critical needs and are therefore eligible for preventative services. However, a number of referrals are received where an individual's needs may not be classified as moderate or substantial. This highlights the requirement to be able to signpost these individuals to other services for support or advice, needs to be strengthened in order to identify suitable support services in the borough.

The Positive Behaviour Support Service was developed in 2010, with Halton Borough Council as the service provider. The service works with people who present with behaviour that challenges services, which can include those with an autistic spectrum condition, and their family. The service aims are to:-

- Contribute to the multidisciplinary assessment of people. The particular focus of the service is to help with the understanding of underlying functions of behaviour that challenges services, parents or carers
- Acquire evidence to support assessment through a variety of techniques including direct observation of behaviour and gathering background information
- On the basis of evidence gained through multidisciplinary assessment, contribute to drawing up plans designed to reduce behaviour that challenges services
- Directly train frontline staff in the implementation of plans
- Deploy staff from the service to work alongside families and frontline staff where deemed necessary
- Monitor and review the success of planned interventions, refining them as necessary on the basis of evidence, in all cases working closely with the multidisciplinary team
- Provide follow up support after interventions have been agreed and are up and running in order to monitor progress and provide top up training where necessary

For those people who are known to social services and are receiving an active service from a social work team and who present with behaviour that challenges services, they are mostly likely to be referred to the Positive Behaviour Support Service via their social worker. Children who are going through the autism spectrum condition diagnosis pathway, can also be referred to the Positive Behaviour Support Service, as part of the Early Intervention arm of the service. In terms of the support the Positive Behaviour Support Service can provide, there are four key areas in which referrals will be prioritised under:-

- (1) Early Intervention (particularly in relation to Children's Services)
- (2) Crisis Prevention/Management
- (3) Technical Support
- (4) Placement Development

The broad eligibility criteria for a child or adult to receive support from the Positive Behaviour Support Service are that, the child or adult should present with behaviour that challenges services, associated with moderate or severe learning disability, including conditions such as autism spectrum conditions. There must also be continuing active involvement of a referring professional team. The Positive Behaviour Support Service will also be able to provide one off consultations for advice and support to service providers who support those presenting with behaviour that challenges services.

Halton's Children Services have developed Team around the Family (TAF) services to provide advice, information and support to families and professionals, working with children living in Halton including disabled children and their families. This includes the Disabled Children Service, which is a small team that can be contacted by either professionals or families to have an initial discussion about the disabled child's needs and family's circumstances to establish how best to provide them with support that will assist them to lead more ordinary lives within their community.

We understand that most disabled children and their families will have experienced a number of assessment processes and so it isn't necessary to put families through even more assessments before they can have a Short Break or family support. The child might already have one or more of the following:

- Disability Living Allowance for care at middle rate or above
- A Statement of Special Educational Needs
- Individual support at school for 15 hours or more

If this is the case then they could be eligible for Short Breaks. However, the type and level of service will be dependent on the needs of the child and family circumstances. In all cases, a worker from the Disabled Children's Service, with parental permission, will access any assessments that are already in place. This will help to establish which planning and review systems the child and family are already engaged with. The worker will then participate in the current plan for the child, providing advice on services and ensuring that the Short Breaks documentation is completed.

If there isn't a recent assessment available, then a discussion will take place with the family to establish who has the most professional involvement with their child and whether the child would benefit from a CAF (Common Assessment Framework) assessment. The outcome of the assessment process is that the level and type of service is agreed and implemented through the Short Breaks Plan.

The Short Breaks Plan is reviewed on a 6 monthly basis and changed to reflect any changes in the child and family's circumstances. Some disabled children who may have more complex needs or be living in more difficult family circumstances may need a larger package of support from different services. Therefore, it may be more appropriate to have involvement from a social worker. In these cases, the worker from the Disabled Children's Service will make contact with the Children's Social Care Duty Officer and discuss whether a Child in Need Assessment would be beneficial for the child.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Ensure specialist knowledge and skills available in Children's Services, Adult Mental Health and Learning Disabilities services.
- Training of staff to ensure needs around autism spectrum conditions are properly understood i.e. not underestimated.
- In order to provide a more focused service there is a need to develop an ASC Champion programme and network across social care, health, employment and education services and the voluntary sector, based on the Surrey County Council model. This will need to be completed with minimum financial input and will draw on existing staffing resources from within the Council and also partner agencies, commissioned services etc.
- A new multiagency safeguarding unit is being developed. The aim of this unit will be to provide a hub and spoke model which is multi-agency efficient, flexible and a responsive service to the local population. The Unit will lead on adults safeguarding and dignity across health and social care and will be supporting the local authority and its partner agencies to:-
 - Fully embed safeguarding adults policies and procedures and thus deliver consistent and robust outcomes for vulnerable adults
 - Monitoring the effectiveness of the delivery of their safeguarding adults activity
 - Providing advice and support regarding individual safeguarding adults cases

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- The introduction of an Initial Assessment Team (adults) to be based at the Contact Centre. This team will receive referrals and staff members will be fully

trained to identify the correct referral and assessment pathway for the individual and reduce the number of people who may be “missed” in our current referral system.

- The development of a resource directory and web portal which will list all support and advice services available in the borough, and will lead to improvements in signposting for those individuals who do not meet the eligibility criteria
- GPs and primary care practitioners are aware of the services available to people with autism and the need for reasonable adjustments within their practices
- Ensure that the ASC Champion programme and network is implemented across social care, health, employment and education services and the voluntary sector
- Ensure the multi-agency safeguarding unit is implemented and provides support concerning safeguarding and dignity across health and social care

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: TRANSITION PLANNING

AIMS

- There is smooth handover from services that support children and young people to services that care for adults
- Young people with autism spectrum conditions are enabled to develop the choices that are right for them

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

In Halton, a Transition Protocol has been agreed by key agencies, which identifies professional roles at each stage in the transition process. Connexions have a key role in providing a personal advisor service to all young people, particularly including those with a Statement of Special Educational Needs or on school action plus enhanced status. Connexions advisors currently prepare a detailed S.139a statement, to enable full information to be made available to post-16 providers and to ensure that appropriate levels of support are agreed.

A Transition Coordinator was appointed by Halton Borough Council in 2007 to support transition, working closely with Adult and Children and Young People's services. The introduction of this post and the development of a transition protocol and associated procedures has improved the transition process in recent years. The tracking of young people from age 14 – 25, who are likely to need support in the future, provides useful information to help plan future services. It also provides potential early indications of future gaps in services that need to be addressed in commissioning plans.

A further appointment was made in 2010 to support transition from an educational perspective within the Division of Inclusive Learning. The Specialist Teacher works within the SEN Service to promote transition across the age range 0-25, working with young people, families, schools and agencies. This role dovetails into all of the processes mentioned above and there is significant partnership working with the Coordinator from within Social Care, in order to ensure an effective level of tracking and support for all children and young adults.

For young people with more complex needs who clearly meet eligibility criteria for adult services, the current systems are working well. However, there are concerns that some young people who do not meet the eligibility criteria for social care services remain potentially vulnerable. Improvements are required around the safety net for young people aged 18-25 in this position by strengthening preventative services.

The Positive Behaviour Support Service also works across children's and adult services minimising the impact of disparity across services. The Positive Behaviour Support Service exists to:-

- Support mainstream services working with people with learning disabilities, whose behaviour is a significant challenge

- Work directly with people whose behaviour presents the greatest level of challenge
- Become a model of excellence, at the forefront of evidence-based practice in this area

The Positive Behaviour Support Service links in with the Transition Coordinator and also attend the operational managers Transition Group and will continue to be an active member of this group.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Look at needs of vulnerable young people and gaps in current services with a view to commissioning more low-level support and strengthen preventative services
- The Transition Protocol is currently being redrafted to reflect that adult social care will begin to work with the young person at 14 years during reviews and then care managers starting the assessment process at 16 years to ensure a seamless transition into adulthood. This will be underpinned by the work of the Positive Behaviour Support Service working across children's and adult services.
- The Positive Behaviour Support Service will be developing an assessment tool to capture data on the impact of interventions to collate information on out of borough placements being used linking ABLLS-R (Assessment of Basic Language and Learning, Partington, 2006) assessments in to the transition process
- The Positive Behaviour Support Service will attend the tracking panel and complex needs panel to offer advice. Adult social care is represented on both the tracking panel and the complex needs panel

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Look in more detail at current cohorts of young people in transition, looking beyond those felt eligible for adult social care services to those identified as having special educational needs associated with higher functioning Autism. Track them for outcomes in terms of education, employment etc and obtain their views about service gaps.
- All young people moving into adult services, will receive transition support as they move into adulthood. *[Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010]*
- Ensure that the young person is involved in their transition planning and that no decision about them is made without them *[Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010]*

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: COMMISSIONING SERVICES

AIMS

- Commissioning local services which aim to provide specialist and preventative measures for people with autism spectrum conditions in Halton.
- Provision of robust local services to reduce the need for young people to move away from their local communities to receive the services they need

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

There is an emphasis on providing services able to adapt to a variety of individual needs rather than autism-specific services.

Local services rather than services at a distance linking into existing care service, education provision and resource basis.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Ensure services are competent to deal with the particular needs of people with autism who may require them

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Develop a local commissioning plan for services for children and adults with autism spectrum conditions, based on local population needs [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]
- Ensure the views of children and adults with autism spectrum conditions and their carers are taken into account in the development of services locally [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]
- Ensure that if a child or adult with an autism spectrum condition requires a care service, they will be able to make choices about the services they receive and will be able to use a personal budget to pay for the service they want (if they are eligible for a personal budget inline with the Halton Borough Council eligibility criteria). Ensure that no decision is made about a person without them being involved in the decision making process [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for Adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]

SECTION TWO: PLANNING AND COMMISSIONING

TITLE: TRAINING FOR STAFF

AIMS

- There is a local strategy for delivering autism training, that identified the training required by different staff groups in order to deliver services that are competent to deal with people with autism
- Quality training in the field of autism is delivered in line with autism training strategy and the National Autistic Society review recommendations

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

A sub group of the Autism Spectrum Conditions Stakeholder group was established to focus on workforce and training issues regarding autism. The purpose of this sub group was to:-

- Support the workforce across all sectors in Halton by providing effective and efficient Learning & Development interventions
- Ensure people with autism spectrum conditions are involved in the design and delivery of Learning & Development interventions
- Develop learning materials, for reference, following learning activity
- Ensure that carers of people with autism spectrum conditions are able to access high quality training

The functions of this group were to:-

- Develop and implement a workforce training plan across all sectors
- Develop and implement a quality learning and development framework for autism spectrum conditions
- Look at good practice guidelines for the workforce

In addition to providing direct support for service users, the Positive Behaviour Support Service also offers a variety of training packages to promote the overall aims of the service. This training can be accessed by request directly to the Positive Behaviour Support Service and such requests shall be reviewed by the team on a regular basis.

The types of training offered by the team include the following:

- Workshops to raise awareness and skills of professional staff
- Generalised training on issues regarding behaviour that challenges services, for frontline staff
- Training on specific issues e.g. active support
- Problem-solving seminars for whole staff teams
- Mentoring of individual staff
- Support groups for family carers

The Positive Behaviour Support Service provides a rolling training programme on the Introduction to Applied Behaviour Analysis, this programme is coordinated through the Corporate Training Centre. The team are also able to design and deliver bespoke training to individuals or teams. The team may identify additional training needs through their work on individual cases and therefore training events to address these needs, will

be held as required. The Positive Behaviour Support Service may also signpost individuals to other relevant training. The team has now started to conduct follow up training with some of the original Halton services to receive training e.g. Inglefield. In addition, parent workshops are now fully developed after being piloted with local parent support groups. Training with Brookfield School has been scheduled in certain key areas and by linking in with the Educational Psychologist for the school.

Representatives from the Positive Behaviour Support Service are also involved in the Autism Spectrum Condition Training Sub Group for both children and adults and the Diagnosis Pathway Sub Group, to ensure that the principles of Applied Behaviour Analysis are included in the work of these groups.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Ensure Halton Borough Council Corporate Training includes suitable references to autism spectrum conditions in its Diversity Training and that staff dealing with members of the public receive this training.
- Promote basic awareness training about autism spectrum conditions for customer facing staff in commercial sector organisations
- Refresh range and content of autism-specific training for professionals and para-professionals to create training opportunities in line with Autism Spectrum Conditions Training Framework
- Promote the development of specialist autism knowledge amongst professionals and harness skills within the service to promote general staff development and support better outcomes for people with autism.
- Create additional learning resources with easy access by staff, including a directory of on-line resources

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Resurrect the Autism Spectrum Condition Training sub group
- Review membership of the Autism Spectrum Condition Training sub group
- Review the draft Training Plan and finalise the plan for implementation across Halton
- Establish a budget for delivery of training interventions identified in the Training Plan
- Identify providers internal and/or external, for training delivery
- Identify other Autism Spectrum Condition training delivered within Halton
- Identify other service user groups that could be involved in the design and delivery of training
- Staff working in health and social care have been offered basic autism awareness training as a minimum standard [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]

- Staff in roles which have a direct impact on access to services for adults with autism – such as GPs, community care assessors and commissioners can access specialist autism training [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]
- Explore the possibility of providing refresher training on autism awareness to account for staff turnover

SECTION THREE: SUPPORT

TITLE: INVOLVING AND SUPPORTING FAMILIES

AIMS

- Developments in policy and services affecting people with autism spectrum conditions are made with the involvement of people and their families.
- People with autism spectrum conditions are empowered to speak out about their own wishes and feelings and are listened to
- Support to enable young people to continue to live with their families if they choose to do so.
- Ensure there is recognition and practical support for family and other informal carers.
- Develop an information sharing system linking into existing provision to enable relevant information to be shared with parents and carers
- Recognising the cohort requiring support within a setting and ensuring information is available for the SENCO to distribute as required

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

There has been involvement of representatives from local support groups for autism spectrum conditions in Halton and carer representatives as part of the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group and also in some of the sub groups developed to undertake certain work streams in this area. It has been important to gauge the views of representatives and carers to ensure that the local strategy will be fit for purpose and will contribute to positive change in service provision in the future.

It is also important to ensure that suitable support is available for carers, to ensure that their needs are also met. If a person is identified as being a carer, they are entitled to an assessment of their support needs; this does not depend upon a diagnosis for an autism spectrum condition for the person they care for. For example, of the Positive Behaviour Support Service were involved with a service user and a worker within the team identifies that there is a requirement for a carers assessment to be carried out, a referral will be made in accordance with the Halton Borough Council Carers Assessment Policy. The carers assessment can be undertaken by the local authority or through a self assessment process at the local Carers Centre based in Runcorn. The assessments help to identify the support needs required for the carer and enable them to access information and advice services and respite provision.

Carers Assessments for carers of disabled children are completed by the Carers Development Officer. The Carers Development Officer will visit the carer, discuss the assessment with them and explain about what other information and services may be of use to the family. Requests for a carers assessment should be made to the Disabled Children's Service. The Carers Centre is also able to offer advice, information and support including therapies, family events and outings. Through various consultation

events, the local authority and Carers Centre also provide opportunities to meet other carers in similar situations and join carer support groups which have been created across Runcorn and Widnes.

A pilot scheme called Light Relief, funded by Halton Borough Council, has been established in the borough. Light Relief works to support parents of children with additional needs by providing parents/carers with the opportunity to engage with other parents whose children are presenting with similar challenges. Parents and carers are invited to attend established support groups and share their concerns with others. Parents have the opportunity to meet others, make new friends, share ideas, experiences and resources and get advice about any concerns they may have. Through group discussions, small group interaction, topical videos, hand outs and listening to guest speakers, parents will be enabled to improve communication, feel more confident as parents, build self-esteem, encourage cooperation, look for positives and find solutions and suggestions to challenges their child may be facing. Parents and carers are also welcome to take part in a range of activities and to share ideas and opinions with guest speakers. From the groups, parents and carers can expect non-judgemental support and advice, mini pamper sessions, a friendly and relaxed atmosphere, practical tips that have been tried and tested by other parents, a flexible system of support, the opportunity to speak to guest experts and have access to a range of beneficial information and resources.

In Halton, there are also a number of Children's Centres which are located across the Borough. These centres provide a variety of services and support for children and their families, which includes those with disabilities or additional needs. There are also Integrated Working Support Teams (IWST) based in Runcorn and Widnes, who work closely with the Disabled Children's Service to provide information, advice and support to professionals and families in Halton.

Advocacy services are also very important in supporting both service users and families. The definition of advocacy which is used for health and social care is "...helping and supporting someone else to speak up for what they want. This can involve expressing their views or acting on their behalf to secure services that they require or rights that they are entitled." (Definition taken from Newport MIND, Development of Advocacy HUB, Halton Borough Council, draft March 2011).

There are various types of advocacy which are available in Halton, which include the following:

- Information giving
- Advice
- Befriending
- Short-term issue or crisis advocacy
- Citizen advocacy
- Advocacy visitors
- Self advocacy
- Peer advocacy
- Collective/Group advocacy
- Professional advice
- Independent Mental Capacity Advocate (IMCA)
- Independent Mental Health Advocate (IMHA)

The provision of advocacy services is currently being reviewed in Halton and over the next 12 months, it is envisaged that a number of improvements will take place which will benefit a wide range of people across the borough. These benefits will include:

- Improved consistency for all providers
- Increased access to all levels of advocacy
- A clear understanding of the role of befriending in the borough
- Improved training for a wide range of voluntary and community sector staff
- A coordinated approach to advocacy across the borough

[Development of Advocacy HUB, Halton Borough Council, draft March 2011]

In regards to advocacy services available for children, in Halton there is Children's Right and Advocacy and Independent. Visitors Service, to provide advocacy services for children and their families. It is best practice to have independence between providers of other services to children in care and the Children's Rights and Advocacy Service. This enables children and young people to have confidence in the service and for the service to effectively challenge practices and policy when required. The main key element to the service is to provide age appropriate information for children looked after to enable them to understand their rights and access the service when needed. This includes specific information and tools for children with disabilities who may have specific communication needs. This information and all contact with children and young people is clear with regard to the service provider's responsibilities to balance confidentiality whilst ensuring children and young people are safe from harm and passing on information when required.

In order to ensure that short breaks services is available for children with autism spectrum conditions and respite provision is available for adults with autism spectrum conditions, a training programme is being rolled out across respite providers which is National Autistic Society accredited. This training will ensure all staff members have received training around autism awareness and active support.

The breaks for Carers of Disabled Children Regulations 2011, came into effect in April 2011. These regulations stated that Local Authorities must provide short breaks for carers of disabled children to enable them to continue to care for their disabled child and to take part in everyday activities. Local Authorities were asked to produce a Short Breaks Statement, which is to be reviewed and revised when new services become available, or when there are any changes to existing services.

"Halton's vision is to extend the quantity and quality of Short Breaks to ensure that disabled children, young people and their families have a choice of services, increased access to inclusive services and opportunities towards independence. We will continue to develop engagement with families and young people towards the provision of flexible and responsive services that are child and family focused and led." (Halton Disabled Children's Service – Short Breaks Statement, Halton Borough Council, October 2011)

Halton has stated its commitment to:-

- Supporting disabled children and families to take part in local community life
- Providing clear information for families about support, services and how to access them
- Providing clear information for families about support, services and how to access them
- Providing choices for disabled children and their families to help them make decisions that can best improve their daily lives
- Listening to the views of disabled children and families so we can continue to improve the quality of their lives

- Working in partnership with disabled children and families to ensure their involvement in decision making regarding the development of support services
- Supporting disabled young people to become more independent through a smooth transition into adulthood
- Providing services that enable families of disabled children to have an improved quality of life within their communities

To be eligible for accessing the short breaks system in Halton, disabled children as being those children and young people aged 0-18years whose daily lives are substantially affected by one or more of the following diagnosed conditions:

- A hearing impairment
- A visual impairment
- A learning disability
- A physical disability
- A chronic/life threatening physical illness
- A conscious disorder e.g. epilepsy
- A mental health condition
- A communication disorder (including autism)

Their condition should usually be expected to last for more than 12 months and have a substantial effect upon the child in more than one of the following areas:

- Physical ability
- Communication and understanding
- Awareness of risk and danger
- Behaviour
- Independence

(Halton's Short Breaks Statement, Halton Borough Council, October 2011)

Halton commissions short breaks services and carers support for disabled children and their families from a range of agencies, all of whom deliver services to children living with Autistic Spectrum Conditions. Halton Borough Council has involvement with the National Autistic Society, HAFS, ChAPS and Friends through Early Bird. Woodview Child Development Centre, in partnership with Children Centres and Disabled Children Services, also provide support via the Little Stars and the Little Explorers groups in Halton. There is also a parents/carers group called The Powerful Voices Parent Participation group, which enables members to have a greater involvement in boards and steering groups that make decisions about services that affect them and their families. The young people's group Bright Sparks, is supported by Halton Speak Out to ensure that the views of young people are included in all local and national consultations and in decision making processes.

Through the Light Relief pilot, it was found that parents wanted to write social stories, so they did not have to rely on a professional to do it on their behalf. Social Stories are a tool for teaching social skills to children with autism and related disabilities. Social Stories provide an individual with accurate information about those situations that he/she may find difficult or confusing. Light Relief arranged for social stories training to be delivered to parents by Speech and Language Therapy Services. On completion of this training, parents received a certificate for their knowledge gained. A further training session on visual supports has also been scheduled for the near future. Parents had also requested that they would like to meet with different professionals, in order to find out more information about what they do and have the opportunity to ask questions. So far, Halton's Transition Manager, an Education Psychologist and an ASD Specialist

Teachers have been invited to attend future meetings. Light Relief have also liaised with the National Autistic Society for them to hold a Help! Seminar for Halton parents around Managing Anger, this will be held on 3rd May 2012.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE

- Improve involvement of the voluntary sector
- Appoint a Practice Manager for Autism to be based within adult services

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Develop an Advocacy “Hub” specification for individuals and families in Halton who require an advocacy service
- Commission a provider to deliver the Advocacy “Hub” and to ensure appropriate publicity of this service
- Ensure that informal carers and/or family members are offered an assessment for their carers needs, to ensure support for carers is in place
- Continue to promote the increasing take up of direct payments and self directed support
- Suitable provision of a Short Breaks Service is available for families of children with autism spectrum conditions if required.
- Suitable provision of respite provision is available for families of adults with autism spectrum conditions if required.

SECTION THREE: SUPPORT

TITLE: SUPPORT WITH ACCOMMODATION

AIMS

- There is a range of signposted accommodation options available for people with autism spectrum conditions
- Where specialised support is required to enable people to live independently, this is available locally

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

There is currently a National Development Team for Inclusion scheme taking place in Halton, whereby individuals with autism spectrum conditions who are currently placed out of area, are being supported to return to Halton, if this is their wish. The Positive Behaviour Support Service recently established in Halton, is also supporting providers to develop appropriately skilled support staff to avoid making out of borough placements in the future.

Information on the range of housing options available (“Six Ways to get a home”) has been produced for professionals and families.

Individuals with autism spectrum conditions are able to access a range of generic support services through Supporting People.

There may be situations where the Positive Behaviour Support Service is working with service users who are placed out of borough. If the intention is to work with this service user to support them to move back to Halton, each case will be reviewed on an individual basis. The review of cases and the procedure to be followed to bring the service user back into borough, will involve the care managers and key workers involved with the individual, family members and carers.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Strengthen mechanisms for overseeing accommodation planning and understanding current and future accommodation needs for people with autism spectrum conditions. Strategic approach should include people with lower level needs – “vulnerable” not “complex” – including people with autism spectrum conditions across the spectrum.
- Consider development of low level support such as “Keyring” schemes
- Need to consider development of new builds for people with more complex needs that cannot be easily met through ‘ordinary’ housing to facilitate the provision of community based support. Design of accommodation needs to be looked at carefully to ensure the needs of people with complex autism spectrum conditions are catered for. This, alongside the development of high quality, inclusive support services will avoid the need for people to go outside Halton to access appropriate support.

- Improved understanding of Autism Spectrum Conditions amongst housing providers would ensure a more effective response to accommodation needs

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Review mechanisms for planning accommodation and support for disabled people including people with autism spectrum conditions
- New build programme to cater for specialised needs i.e. more spacious single level accommodation
- Increase accommodation options available for all disabled people including those with autism spectrum conditions e.g. Community Living Networks (Keyring)
- Continue joint working between the Positive Behaviour Support Service and local providers to develop skilled, inclusive local support based on individually identified needs
- Improve access to information for professionals, individuals and families regarding local accommodation and support options

SECTION THREE: SUPPORT

TITLE: SUPPORT WITH FRIENDSHIPS AND RELATIONSHIPS

AIMS

- There are opportunities and support for people with autism spectrum conditions to make and sustain safe friendships and relationships, avoiding the risk of social isolation

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

In Children's Services there are a number of short break activities available for young disabled children or children with additional needs, which enable them to make and maintain friendships. Organisations such as Youth Services promote healthy relationships and work with young people through any issues and provide advice and sessional work on specific issues such as positive relationships, bullying, confidence and self esteem. Halton Speak Out, a self advocacy charity based in Runcorn for people with learning disabilities, has established the Bright Sparks Project which is funded by Halton Borough Council. The aim of the project is to enable more young people to engage in consultations and participation events. Through this group, young people can develop communication and listening skills and build on their confidence. Some young people have received training to be young ambassadors and role models for other young disabled people. Transition support is also available to those young people moving into adult services. This includes projects that support young people to be aspirational and have a central role in deciding what they want for the lives in the future, which can include maintaining or establishing friendships and relationships.

Friendships and relationships have been identified as a priority theme from Valuing People Now in the North West through the work of Halton's Learning Disability Partnership Board. Various events around Valuing People Now have been held for adults with learning disabilities in order to gain people's views on the barriers and issues they face whilst trying to sustain friendships and relationships. Three nurses from the Adults with Learning Disabilities HUB Team are going to undertake an accredited training course, which will help raise awareness of the issues that people face in establishing and sustaining relationships. The team is also developing and delivering sessions on friendships and relationships and sexual issues. These sessions will also take place in Day Services in the near future.

The Community Bridge Building Team also provides a befriending service for service users who are at risk of social isolation. The Community Bridge Building Team are all qualified travel trainers and they support/train people to travel around Halton on public transport independently, which enables people to meet up with family and friends whenever they wish to. The team also supports people to access social groups such as discos, leisure activities, education and voluntary work. This enables people to have a valued role in their community and sustain friendships and relationships. The Community Bridge Building Team provides support for service users at evening time and at weekends, in addition to the support available Monday-Friday.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Promote friendships, social groups and other ways of reducing social isolation

- Development of schemes such as “Keyring” which include a social networking component
- Increase in low level support networks to work with individuals
- Work with local voluntary support groups regarding the support they can provide to individuals

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Continued development and promotion of social groups and befriending services available in Halton
- Ensure one to one or group sessions are available for people to discuss any problems they have with establishing or sustaining friendships and relationships

SECTION FOUR: EDUCATION, WELLBEING & HEALTH

TITLE: EDUCATION AND EMPLOYMENT

AIMS

- Support for people to live fulfilling lives, with well signposted choices
- Support routes into employment for those who are able
- A range of flexible local Education and Training options are accessible to people with autism spectrum conditions, designed to maximise individual potential
- Minimise the number of people with autism spectrum conditions who due to lack of suitable local provision are forced to move away from home to obtain education and training.

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

Community Bridge Builders have developed pilot schemes, and work with a range of people including people with autism spectrum conditions. The Community Bridge Building Team support and enable people to find voluntary work. They will work in a person centred way to find voluntary work that is meaningful to the person. The Bridge Builder will work with the person and together they will market for a job, they will then support that person in the workplace until the person feels confident and has built up friendships to do this themselves. Once the person is settled into employment, the Community Bridge Building Team provides ongoing support via a phone call or visit to ensure that both the employer and the person feel supported.

Halton Day Services also have a number of daytime activities and employment opportunities available for those with autism spectrum conditions. The projects currently on offer include various catering projects such as Norton Priory Café and Cup Cake Catering, a microbrewery, a hair dressing salon, and “Wheels for All” – a scheme to rent out and maintain bicycles at Victoria Park in Widnes and Shopmobility in Halton Lea. The model used by Halton Day Services has been recognised both nationally and internationally, as it offers the opportunity for a more meaningful role in society for people and it provides a pathway to paid employment in the future.

The Learning Disability Partnership Board and the People’s Cabinet held an event in July 2011, to develop a Business Plan. The Business Plan encompassed the key themes from Valuing People Now which include: Employment, Keeping Safe, Health and Housing. A lead officer for each of the key themes was identified to work with the expert Minister from the People’s Cabinet, to agree three actions for each theme to be completed by March 2013. Progress towards completion of each of these actions in the Business Plan, will be monitored on a regular basis via the People’s Cabinet and the Learning Disability Partnership Board.

The Positive Behaviour Support Service has been delivering training to Education Staff in the use of a specific assessment tool for children with autism spectrum conditions or other developmental disabilities, called the Assessment of Basic Language and Learning Skills Revised. This will promote the early intervention of supporting children with autism spectrum conditions in an educational setting.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Need to better understand the range of needs across autism spectrum conditions
- Identify further employment opportunities for paid work for individuals with autism spectrum conditions
- Identify the requirement for services such as social skills training, independent living skills training
- Closer look at destinations, including employment and training of cohorts of young people across Autism Spectrum leaving school. Compare with national picture which indicates that high proportion of people with autism spectrum conditions are not in work
- Set up a support group for close relatives of people with autism
- Involvement of Connexions service up to 25 years. Involvement of Riverside College in the ASC Strategic Group.
- Children and Enterprise Directorate have requested a new post of an Assistant Behaviour Analyst from the Positive Behaviour Support Service to be involved in education specific work in schools
- Adopt the Assessment of Basic Language and Learning Skills Revised assessment tool as a method of assessment and intervention and promote through resource bases and Special Schools.

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- The three actions identified for Employment in the Learning Disability Partnership Board Business Plan to be completed
- Develop an Employment Pathway to address the needs of people with autism spectrum conditions in Halton
- Identify any training and support requirements e.g. specialist job trainers, needed for people with autism spectrum conditions such as social skills training
- Employer education – actively promote the benefits of employing people with autism spectrum conditions to employers

SECTION FOUR: EDUCATION, WELLBEING & HEALTH

TITLE: STAYING HEALTHY

AIMS

- To ensure equal access to health and wellbeing services

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

The work to date has focused on learning disabilities in response to Valuing People Now, but will benefit those adults with autism who also have a learning disability. This includes annual health checks with their GP practice, accessible information and health passport.

The adults with Learning Disabilities Partnership Board has led on work in response to Six Lives (Ombudsmen, 2009), which highlighted cases of poor care and treatment.

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Knowledge and awareness of autism among staff, especially front line (i.e. GPs)
- Knowledge and awareness of reasonable adjustments, as well as supporting a culture of innovation across the system
- Access to health promotion and screening (e.g. cancer) by making reasonable adjustments
- Access to psychological therapies through the Improving Access to Psychological Therapies services via Bridgewater or Self Help Services

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Halton Borough Council has a Learning Disability Nursing Team based within the joint Adults with Learning Disabilities Team. The individual workers within the team are allocated as a link worker to each GP practice in Halton
- To discuss with the local autism community the reasonable adjustments they need to access health services and then put into practice
- To review the Department of Health's plans around personal health budgets to see how they relate to adults with autism, especially in regards to facilitating and supporting access to health services
- To ensure that health passports and Health Action Plans are available for all adults with autism and not just those with a learning disability

SECTION FOUR: EDUCATION, WELLBEING & HEALTH

TITLE: INFORMATION

AIMS

- Helpful information to explain the support and services available in clear and appropriate formats, including online

WHAT ARE WE DOING ALREADY?

Work is currently taking place in Halton to develop a User Led Organisation. This charity called Halton Disability Partnership, has been set up in order to represent all disability groups in Halton. The Charity has recruited trustees who are all local residents and are keen to represent the views of people with a range of disabilities living in Halton. Work that will be undertaken by Halton Disability Partnership, includes the development of a resource directory of all voluntary sector charities in Halton, who provide information and support services to residents of the Borough. This information will be developed into a web portal and will improve the current level of signposting as key workers will be able to access this information readily. Halton Disability Partnership will also be able to signpost people to relevant agencies to form a more cohesive approach to information and support services.

Information on services for disabled children and families is available through various routes, including the Family Information Service, Children Centres, Carers Centre, Halton Borough Council publications and local press. The Disabled Children Service maintains an information network and families agree for their contact details to be held, so that they can receive information and be included in consultations etc.

The Halton Borough Council website has two areas dedicated to information specifically aimed at families of disabled children, which includes Halton's short breaks statement. The Disabled Children Service have set up a twitter account **@haltondcs** and regularly post local and national information that may be of use to families.

The Light Relief pilot project has commenced work to compile a list of useful resources that can be shared with parents and carers. Information sheets are also being developed, with reference to common parental concerns around autism spectrum conditions. These information sheets will available at www.inclusionhalton.co.uk

HOW CAN WE IMPROVE?

- Develop better accessible information on services, updated online
- Stronger specialist response to autism spectrum conditions with range of information for people and families, including directory of online resources
- Recruitment of a Practice Manager for Autism, to be based in adult services

WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

- Launch and promotion of Halton Disability Partnership

- Development of resource directory and web portal to strengthen information and support services available in Halton
- Ensure that if a child or adult is diagnosed with an autism spectrum condition, they will be given access to information about autism and details of potential sources of support such as local voluntary groups and national representative groups [*Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010*]

REFERENCES

Autism Spectrum Disorders in Children and Young People: recognition, referral and diagnosis, NICE, September 2011

Baron-Cohen et al (2009): Prevalence of autism-spectrum conditions: UK school-based population study, *The British Journal of Psychiatry* 194: 500-509

Clinical Pathways and Autism Spectrum Conditions: Summary of outcomes from half-day workshop, Dr Alistair L. Barrowcliff – Consultant Clinical Psychologist/Lead Clinician, 5 Boroughs Partnership, NHS Foundation Trust, 31st August 2011.

Development of an Advocacy HUB, Halton Borough Council, draft March 2011

Department of Health: what this guidance means for adults with autism December 2010

Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives, The strategy for adults with autism in England (2010), Department of Health

Halton Multi-Agency Transition Strategy for Young People aged 14-25 2010-2013, Halton Borough Council November 2010

http://www.awares.org/static_docs/about_autism.asp

<http://www2.halton.gov.uk/pdfs/educationandlearning/childrenstrust/app10nationalautisticrevasd>

Implementing “Fulfilling and Rewarding lives” Statutory guidance for local authorities and NHS organisations to support implementing of the autism strategy, December 2010

Management of Autism Spectrum Conditions in Adults, NICE, June 2012 (*draft*)

Supporting People with Autism through Adulthood, National Audit Office (2009)

Towards “Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives”, The first year delivery plan for adults with autism in England (2010), Department of Health

www.autism.org.uk

DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The Development Plan covers the period from 2012 – 2016 and is open to review at any stage. It sets out our initial priority areas and identifies lead officer(s) and timescales, to help start the delivery on the priorities set-out in this strategy. The Development Plan will be regularly reviewed with periodic progress reports to the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group.

The strategy will be reviewed in its entirety initially within six months and thereafter at 12 month intervals.

SECTION	SECTION TITLE	WHAT WE ARE GOING TO DO	LEAD	BY WHEN	OUTCOME
Autism in Context	The National Context	No actions identified	No actions identified	No actions identified	No actions identified
Autism in Context	The Local Context	No actions identified	No actions identified	No actions identified	No actions identified
Planning and Commissioning	Understanding the Local Population	Borough-wide school initiative (CASPA) for all schools to be able to identify the small steps of progress of pupils that enables targeting and tracking. A model of a virtual school is adopted to track a child or young person's progress, informing commissioning and service delivery.	School Improvement Services	March 2013	
		Over the next 2 years, we will track cohorts of young people leaving school as a way of increasing understanding of response to autism and in particular, higher functioning autism	Practice Manager, Autism	March 2013	
		Identify lead officer(s) to explore how information relating to service users with autism spectrum conditions is	Practice Manager, Autism With support from	June 2012	

		tracked in both Children's Services and Adult Services e.g. how information is recorded on Carefirst and Tribal and how accurate it is	Carefirst 6 Team (to be confirmed)		
Planning and Commissioning	Leadership	The local authority lead professional – Operational Director for Commissioning & Complex Needs to chair the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group meetings and ensure this group meets on a quarterly basis to keep abreast of all developments in this area	Operational Director, Commissioning & Complex Needs	Ongoing	
		The Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group to agree and implement the Halton Autism Strategy 2011-2014	Operational Director, Commissioning and Complex Needs	April 2012	
		The lead professional and members of the Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group to decide the governance arrangements for the group regarding where it should report into	Operational Director, Commissioning and Complex Needs	September 2011	
		Embracing and implementing the recommendations from the National Autistic Society Review 2012 of the authority	Practice Manager, Autism	March 2014	
Planning and Commissioning	Diagnosis	To finalise the School Years Pathway for children with adherence to NICE guidance for children	Divisional Manager, Inclusion 0-25 (to be confirmed)	August 2012	
		Agree and implement a revised adult diagnostic pathway once NICE have published their	Senior Commissioning Manager, NHS	August 2012	

		Clinical Guide in 2012	Halton and St Helens		
		Establish a framework to ensure that if a child or adult is diagnosed with autism, they will be offered an assessment of their needs, regardless of their IQ and their carers will be informed of their right to a carers assessment	Divisional Manager, Inclusion 0-25 & Divisional Manager Assessment & Care Management & Senior Commissioning Manager, NHS Halton and St Helens & Practice Manager, Autism	August 2012	
		Staff working in health and social care are able to identify potential signs of autism and understand how to make reasonable adjustments in their behaviour, communication and services for children and adults with autism spectrum conditions	Learning and Development Manager & Principal Manager, Positive Behaviour Support Service	Ongoing	
Planning and Commissioning	Assessment and Care Management	The introduction of an Initial Assessment Team to be based at the Contact Centre. The team will receive referrals and staff members will be fully trained to identify the correct referral and assessment pathway for the individual and reduce the number of people who may be “missed” in our current referral system	Divisional Manager, Independent Living Services	April 2012	

		The development of a resource directory and web portal which will list all support and advice services available in the borough and will lead to improvements in signposting for those individuals who do not meet the eligibility criteria	Divisional Manager, Independent Living Services	September 2012	
		GPs and primary care practitioners are aware of the services available to people with autism and the need for reasonable adjustments within their practices	Senior Commissioning Manager, NHS Halton and St Helens	March 2013	
		Ensure that the ASC Champion programme and network is implemented across social care, health, employment and education services and the voluntary sector	Practice Manager, Autism	September 2012	
		Ensure the multi-agency safeguarding unit is implemented and provides support concerning safeguarding and dignity across health and social care	Divisional Manager, Independent Services	September 2012	
Planning and Commissioning	Transition Planning	Look in more detail at current cohorts of young people in transition, looking beyond those felt eligible for adult social care services to those identified as having special educational needs associated with higher functioning autism. Track them for outcomes in terms of education, employment etc and obtain	Transition Coordinator	March 2012	

		their views about service gaps etc			
		All young people moving into adult services, will receive transition support as they move into adulthood	Transition Coordinator	Ongoing	
		Ensure that the young person is involved in their transition planning and that no decision about them is made without them	Transition Coordinator	Ongoing	
Planning and Commissioning	Commissioning Services	Develop a local commissioning plan for services for children and adults with autism spectrum conditions, based on local population needs	Divisional Manager, Commissioning & Divisional Manager, Commissioning Children & Families	March 2013	
		Ensure the views of children and adults with autism spectrum conditions and their carers' are taken into account in the development of services locally	Practice Manager, Autism	Ongoing	
		Ensure that if a child or adult with an autism spectrum condition required a care service, they will be able to make choices about the services they receive and will be able to use a personal budget to pay for the service they want (if they are eligible for a personal budget in line with the Halton Borough Council eligibility criteria). Ensure that no decision is made about a person without	Divisional Manager, Assessment & Care Management	Ongoing	

		them being involved in the decision making process			
Planning and Commissioning	Training for staff	Resurrect the Autism Condition Training sub group	Learning and Development Manager	August 2011	Training sub group has been resurrected and meets on a bi-monthly basis. The group is chaired by the Learning & Development Manager
		Review membership of the Autism Spectrum Condition Training sub group	Learning and Development Manager	December 2011	The membership has been reviewed and appropriate representatives from the ASC Strategic Group attend the sub group.
		Review the draft Training Plan and finalise the plan for implementation across Halton	Learning and Development Manager	March 2012	
		Establish a budget for delivery of training, interventions identified in the Training Plan	Learning and Development Manager	March 2012	
		Identify providers internal and/or external for training delivery	Learning and Development Manager	April 2012	
		Identify other Autism Spectrum Condition training delivered within Halton	Learning and Development Manager	March 2012	
		Identify other service user groups that could be involved in the design and delivery of training	Learning and Development Manager & Practice Manager, Autism	March 2012	
		Staff working in health and social care have been offered basic autism awareness training as a minimum standard	Learning and Development Manager	Ongoing	
		Staff in roles which have a direct impact on access to services for adults with autism	Learning and Development Manager	Ongoing	

		– such as GPs, community care assessors and commissioners can access specialist autism training	& Principal Manager, Positive Behaviour Support Service & Senior Commissioning Manager, Halton and St Helens		
		Explore the possibility of providing refresher training on autism awareness to account for staff turnover	Learning and Development Manager	Ongoing	
Support	Involving and Supporting Families	Develop an Advocacy “Hub” specification for individuals and families in Halton who require an advocacy service	Commissioning Manager, Older People	October 2012	
		Commission a provider to deliver the Advocacy “Hub” and to ensure appropriate publicity of this service	Commissioning Manager, Older People	October 2012	
		Ensure that informal carers and/or family members are offered an assessment for their carers needs, to ensure support for carers is in place	Divisional Manager, Assessment & Care Management	Ongoing	
		Continue to promote the increasing take up of direct payments and self-directed support	Divisional Manager, Independent Living & Divisional Manager, Assessment & Care Management	Ongoing	
		Suitable short breaks service is available for families of children with autism spectrum conditions, if required	Principal Manager Disabled Children’s Service	Ongoing	
		Suitable respite provision is	Commissioning	Ongoing	

		available for families of adults with autism spectrum conditions, if required	Manager, Disabled Adults (to be confirmed)		
Support	Support with accommodation	Review mechanisms for planning accommodation and support for disabled people including people with autism spectrum conditions	Commissioning Manager Disabled Adults (to be confirmed)	Mach 2013	
		New build programme to cater for specialised needs i.e. more spacious single level accommodation	Commissioning Manager Disabled Adults (to be confirmed)	March 2013	
		Increase accommodation options available for all disabled including those with autism spectrum conditions e.g. Community Living Networks (Keyring)	Commissioning Manager Disabled Adults (to be confirmed)	March 2013	
		Continue joint working between the Positive Behaviour Support Service and local providers to develop skilled, inclusive local support based on individually identified needs	Principal Manager, Positive Behaviour Support Service	Ongoing	
		Improve access to information for professionals, individuals and families regarding local accommodation and support options	Divisional Manager, Commissioning	Ongoing	
Support	Support with friendships and relationships	Continued development and promotion of social groups and befriending services available in Halton	Clinical Lead Nurse, Adults with Learning Disabilities Team & Practice Manager, Autism	Ongoing	
		Ensure one to one or group sessions are available for	Clinical Lead Nurse, Adults with Learning	Ongoing	

		people to discuss any problems they have with establishing or sustaining friendships and relationships	Disabilities Team		
Education, Wellbeing and Health	Education and Employment	The three actions identified for employment in the Learning Disability Partnership Board to be completed	Lead Officer, Environment & Economy	March 2013	
		Develop an employment pathway to address the needs of people with autism spectrum conditions in Halton	Divisional Manager, Community Services	June 2012	
		Identify any training and support requirements e.g. specialist job trainers etc, needed for people with autism spectrum conditions such as social skills training	Lead Officer, Environment & Economy & Divisional Manager, Community Services	March 2012	
		Employer Education – actively promote the benefits of employing people with autism spectrum conditions to employers	Lead Officer, Environment & Economy	Ongoing	
Education, Wellbeing and Health	Staying Health	Halton Borough Council has a LD Nursing Team based within the joint Adult with Learning Disabilities Team. The individual workers within the team are allocated as a link worker to each GP practice in Halton.	Clinical Lead Nurse, Adults with Learning Disabilities	Ongoing	
		To discuss with the local autism community the reasonable adjustments they need to access health services and then put into practice	Senior Commissioning Manager, Halton and St Helens	TBC	

		To review the Department of Health's plans around personal health budgets to see how they relate to adults with autism, especially in regards to facilitating and supporting access to health services	Senior Commissioning Manager, Halton and St Helens	TBC	
		To ensure that health passports and Health Action Plans are available for all adults with autism and not just those with a learning disability	Senior Commissioning Manager, Halton and St Helens	TBC	
Education, Wellbeing and Health	Information	Launch and promotion of Halton Disability Partnership	Divisional Manager, Independent Living	December 2011	Update to be provided
		Ensure that if a child or adult is diagnosed with an autism spectrum condition, they will be given access to information about autism and details of potential sources of support such as local voluntary groups and national representative groups	Practice Manager, Autism	Ongoing	

Glossary of Terms

The glossary provides definitions of frequently used words in relation to autism. For a more detailed glossary please refer to www.autism.org.uk

Term	Definition
Asperger Syndrome	<p>An Autism Spectrum Condition that affects the way a person communicates and relates to others. A number of traits of autism are common to Asperger syndrome including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Difficulty in communicating • Difficulty in social relationships • A lack of imagination and creative play <p>However, people with Asperger syndrome usually have fewer problems with language than those with autism, often speaking fluently through their words can sometimes sound formal or stilted. People with Asperger syndrome also do not have the accompanying learning disabilities often associated with autism; in fact, people with Asperger syndrome are often of average or above average intelligence.</p>
Autism	<p>A lifelong developmental disability that affects the way a person communicates and relates to people around them. Children and adults with autism are unable to relate to others in a meaningful way. Their ability to develop friendships is impaired, as is their capacity to understand other people's feelings. All people with autism have impairments in social interactions, social communication and imagination. This is referred to as the triad of impairments.</p>
Autism Spectrum Conditions	<p>An Autism Spectrum Condition is a complex lifelong developmental disability that affects the way a person communicates and relates to people around them. Many people have a mixture of features from these two syndromes but do not fit neatly into either. The whole spectrum is defined by the presence of impairments affecting social interaction, communication and imagination known as the triad of impairments. This is always accompanied by a narrow repetitive range of activities.</p>
Challenging Behaviour	<p>Behaviour of such intensity, frequency or duration that the physical safety of the person or others is likely to be placed in serious jeopardy, or behaviour which is likely to seriously limit or deny access to or use ordinary community facilities, or impair a child's personal growth, development and family life.</p>
Communication Disorders	<p>Impaired ability to communicate usually due to speech language or hearing disorders.</p>
Developmental Disorders	<p>Generic terms relating to all children and adults with substantial continuing disability originating in childhood.</p>
Diagnosis	<p>The skill of distinguishing one disease from another. The opinion arrived at as to the nature of disease.</p>
Early Intervention	<p>Action taken utilising medical, family, school, social or mental health resources and aimed at infants or children at risk of, or in the early stages of mental, physical, learning or other disorders.</p>
Inclusion	<p>Placement and education of students with disabilities in general education classrooms with students of the same age who do not have disabilities.</p>
Interventions	<p>All planned attempts to promote the welfare of exceptional individuals. There are 3 types: preventive (efforts to thwart the appearance of disabilities); remedial (the process of</p>

	overcoming a deficit); compensatory (providing a means to circumvent, substitute or offset and irremediable deficit).
Language Skills	The use of language for communicative competence. The ability to use language as a tool to aid interaction within society, via communication with individuals and groups.
Learning Disability	A permanent condition, arising during childhood or adolescence, characterised by a state of incomplete development of mind that includes significant impairments of intelligence and social functioning.
Multiple Disabilities	Simply the presence of more than one disability in the same individual. There are too many possible combinations to list e.g. autism and deafness, physical disability and Downs Syndrome.
Nonverbal Communication	Communication through use of facial expression, posture, gesture and body movement.
Peer Interactions	Interpersonal interactions between children within the same set, age range or school.
Prevalence	One of the main ways to measure the frequency of a disease in a particular population – it is the total number of cases that are present at any one time – covering both old and new cases.
Prognosis	A forecast as to the probable result of an illness, particularly with regard to the prospect of recovery.
Respite Care	Provision of care, relief or support to carers of physically or mentally disabled persons.
Self Injurious Behaviour	Self directed violence including hitting the head with a clenched fist, banging the head against hard objects, skin picking and eye gouging.
Social Behaviour	All individual's social abilities such as establishing and maintaining satisfactory interpersonal skills, displaying behaviour within reasonable social expectations and making personal adjustments.
Statementing	Preparation of a formal document that specifies any additional input or support required to best meet the learning needs of an individual child.
Triad of Impairments	Impairments affecting social interaction, social communication and imagination which are essential features of an autism spectrum disorder.



Draft Scrutiny Review of Autism

Report
June 2012

CONTENTS

Contents	Page	Paragraph
Purpose of the report	3	1.0
Structure of the report	3	2.0
Introduction	3 - 4	3.0
Methodology	4	4.0
Evidence and Analysis with findings/conclusions and recommendations	4 – 10	5.0
Overall Conclusion	11	6.0

Annexes	Number
Topic brief	1
Methodology	2
Autism Scrutiny Review Site Visit – 9 th September 2011	3
Documents Considered including National Best Practice within the review	4
Action Plan	5

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

The purpose of the report, as outlined in the initial topic brief (at *Annex 1*) is to:

- ◆ Gain an understanding of Autism and an appreciation for the broad range of conditions that fall under the spectrum from low level to high functioning levels of autism;
- ◆ Examine the effectiveness of the current pathways for diagnosis and assessment for adults with an autism spectrum condition (ASC) in Halton;
- ◆ Gain an understanding of the Positive Behaviour Support Service and the benefits their interventions can bring to local service providers;
- ◆ Consider National best practice in relation to pathways for diagnosis and assessment for adults with autism spectrum conditions; and
- ◆ Consider ways to continue to make improvements and enable Halton to fully implement the statutory guidance and delivery plan.

2.0 STRUCTURE OF THE REPORT

This report is structured with an introduction, a brief summary of the methodology followed by evidence, analysis with findings/conclusions and recommendations. The annexes include the topic brief, methodology detail and an action plan to capture the recommendations from the scrutiny review.

3.0 INTRODUCTION

3.1 Reason the scrutiny review was commissioned

In December 2010, the Department of Health issued statutory guidance and a delivery plan for local authorities and NHS organisations to support the implementation of the national autistic strategy “Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives”. There is an expectation that local authorities will implement the requirements set out in the statutory guidance. A regional network group has been established and that will provide an opportunity to monitor progress towards implementing the statutory guidance locally. The scrutiny review would provide a good opportunity to look at our services in supporting people with autism spectrum conditions living in Halton.

3.2 Policy and Performance Boards

This report was commissioned as a scrutiny working group for the Health Policy and Performance Board.

3.3 Membership of the Scrutiny Working Group

Membership of the Scrutiny Working Group included:

Members	Officers
Cllr Ellen Cargill Cllr Joan Lowe Cllr Dave Austin Cllr Margaret Horabin Cllr Martha Lloyd-Jones Cllr Carol Plumpton-Walsh Cllr Geoff Zygadllo	Paul McWade – Operational Director for Commissioning and Complex Needs Maria Saville – Principal Manager for Positive Behaviour Support Service (PBSS) Kath Devonshire – Practice Manager for PBSS John Williams – Practice Manager for Autism Emma Sutton-Thompson – Principal Policy Officer

4.0 Methodology Summary

This scrutiny review was conducted through a number of means:

- Monthly meetings of the scrutiny review topic group;
- Presentations by various key members of staff (detail of the presentations can be found in *Annex 2*);
- Provision of information;
- Carer consultation;
- Site visit to Day Services; and
- National Autistic Society speaker.

5.0 Evidence (summary of evidence gathered) and Analysis with findings/conclusions

5.1 Autistic Spectrum Condition Awareness

Maria Saville, Principal Manager for the Positive Behaviour Support Service (PBSS) and Kath Devonshire, Practice Manager gave a presentation on the awareness of Autistic Spectrum Condition at the first meeting of the topic group. This covered:

- The Facts about Autism
- Triad of Impairments
- Communication
- Behavioural Excesses and Deficits
- Common misconceptions
- Common interventions
- Uncommon interventions

Part of the remit of the PBSS is direct work with service users to assist with technical support and placement development. The team are currently working with the following services users:

Area	Service	Numbers
Halton	Adults	5
	Children	12
Knowsley	Adults	4
	Children	8
St Helens	Adults	3

There is currently a waiting list approaching 30 people.

As well as dealing directly with people who have behaviour that challenges services the team are also involved in crisis prevention and management. Since the team's establishment in November 2010 they have delivered training to approximately 150 staff across adult and children's services, including:

- support workers;
- managers;
- learning disability nurses;
- social workers; and
- school staff.
- Pilot parent Workshops delivered- including an evening workshop for parents of children with a new diagnosis of ASC and also a full behaviour that challenges workshop for parents on the waiting list.
- Training planned with Halton Autistic Family Support Group (HAFS) and Cheshire Asperger's Parent's Support Group (CHaPs). Key staff have been invited to attend a training workshop to help evaluate PBSS training workshop material (especially with regards to accessibility for parents)
- Training with Cavendish School with staff working in the ASC pathways class
- Training with Brookfield School staff
- Active member of ASC strategy group and training sub group

The majority of these have been Halton staff although some adults staff from Knowsley council have accessed the training.

5.1.1 Early Intervention

- Training delivered to Education Staff in the use of a specific assessment tool for children with ASC or other developmental disabilities (Assessment of Basic Language and Learning Skills, Revised- ABLLS-R)
- Proposed Pilot Project using Assessment Tool in new ASC resource settings within Halton- ongoing work happening on this
- Links to ASC diagnostic pathway

5.1.2 Invest to Save

The PBSS will serve those who have a Learning Disability/Autistic Spectrum Condition and present with the most complex needs.

It is the first in the UK to be staffed and led by Board Certified Behaviour Analysts (BCBA)

Core Aims for the individual service users are:

- Improved quality of life
- Increased opportunity for meaningful engagement
- More opportunity for education/cognitive development
- Increased opportunity for community participation
- Greater access to a less restrictive environment
- Improved relationships

The service is expected to achieve financial benefits by:

- Reducing demand for expensive, specialist out of area placements through prevention of placement, and by support for repatriation programmes;
- Correspondingly reducing pressure on Continuing Healthcare funding, which contributes significantly to these placements, and also social care & education funding; and
- Helping to create robust community services that will reduce pressure on local NHS inpatient beds, thereby facilitating programmes to reduce their number.

5.1.3 Conclusion

The group concluded that the awareness-raising session clearly demonstrated the “ground-breaking” work that the PBSS is involved in and the high level of expertise and knowledge that the team has. The group found the interventions that the team use to support positive behaviour very interesting.

Recommendations:

- i) Members to support the continued work of the Positive Behaviour Support Service.***

5.2 Autism Strategy in Halton

Paul McWade, Operational Director for Commissioning and Complex Care gave a presentation on the Autism Strategy at the July meeting of the topic group. This presentation included the following main points:

- Statutory background
- Autism Spectrum Condition Strategic Group
- Progress on Halton’s Autism Strategy

It was highlighted that as the guidance is required by law, it is known as “statutory” guidance and this means that local authorities and NHS bodies must follow the relevant sections or provide good reason why they are not. If this is not followed, they could be liable to judicial review.

The topic group were briefed about the ASC strategic group being a multi-agency group including representatives from the PCT, 5Boroughs Partnership, Children’s Services and Adult Services who meet on a quarterly basis and cover both children and adults.

Halton’s Autism Strategy has been drafted to meet the requirements of the Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives Delivery Plan and covers a three-year period. The Strategy has an Action Plan that will be monitored by the strategic group on a quarterly basis. In order to ensure the strategy is fully implemented, a Practice Manager specifically for Autism has been recruited for a two year period.

5.2.1 Conclusion

The topic group supported the Autism Strategy and the recruitment of the Practice Manager for Autism.

Recommendations:

- i) Halton’s Autism Strategy to be approved and implemented by the ASC Strategic Group, Senior Management and Health Policy and Performance Board, Children’s Trust, and Halton and St Helen’s Clinical Commissioning Committee; and***
- ii) Implementation of Autism Strategy Action Plan to be monitored and progress updates provided by the ASC Strategic Group.***

5.3 A Parent/Carer’s Perspective

At the July meeting of the topic group, two parents/carers of young adults with Autism/Down’s Syndrome in Halton attended the meeting to share their experience of services they had encountered, professionals and attitudes towards Autism. Both carers recounted their experiences from when their son/daughter were first diagnosed and some of the positive and negative experiences throughout their children growing up, especially with regard to information and attitudes of professionals.

5.3.1 Conclusion

The group felt that the contribution from parents/carers in this process was critical and this discussion with the two carers was very important in understanding the issues. Following the meeting and in preparation for the final scrutiny review report, Councillor Zygadlo requested that the carers were asked their views in terms of recommendations.

Recommendations:

- i) ***Continue to improve engagement with parents/carers, building on the work that has already taken place.***

5.4 Site Visit to Day Services

On 9th September the topic group had a site visit to Day Services, arranged by Eileen Clarke, Performance Manager, Halton Day Services. The group visited the following services:

- Independent Living Centre
- Altered Images Hair and Beauty Salon
- Shopmobility
- Refectory Café, Norton Priory
- Tea room/Brewery, Norton Priory

At each venue, members of the topic group were able to talk to people who worked/attended the services. This was invaluable to the work of the topic group. Members could clearly see how meaningful daytime activities had a positive impact on people's lives, increased their independence and confidence. Amongst the many comments that were given to the group, two in particular were highlighted as powerful messages to support the daytime activities:

Councillor Lowe asked one of the service users working at Shopmobility, if she also worked at The Coach House. The service-user replied "I used to work at the Coach House, but I don't have time anymore because I'm too busy working at other places".

On the visit to the Cottage Tea Rooms at the Brewery, a service-user wanted to tell the topic group that she was moving into supported living accommodation, and to know that she is now thoroughly enjoying her new found independence.

A detailed site visit diary is included in Annex 3.

5.4.1 Conclusion

Members of the topic group found the site visit to be a very positive and uplifting experience. There are some excellent examples of services available for people with autism spectrum conditions to engage in across Halton. Service users are being equipped with life skills and experience, which will enable them to live more fulfilling and rewarding lives within their local community and wider.

Recommendations:

- i) ***Continue and extend the work opportunities, both paid and voluntary, for individuals with ASC in Halton enhancing skills to achieve this;***
- ii) ***Increase publicity about the good work that is being progressed in day services; and***

- iii) Source funding for new batteries for the shopmobility scooters.*

5.5 Day Activities for People with Autism

At the October meeting of the topic group, John Williams, Practice Manager for Autism gave a presentation around Day Activities for People with Autism. The main points of the presentation included:

- Detail of the services that are available in Halton
- The customer journey
- Employment and Volunteering venues
- Core aims of the Positive Behaviour Support Service
- Challenges facing the Council
- Recommendations to improve this area

5.5.1 Conclusion

The group concluded that there is still a long way to go with meaningful day activities for people with Autism although good progress has been made. There are challenges ahead, including attitudes and concerns, limited places within day services and voluntary service and lack of opportunities. Having the Practice Manager for Autism in post is a good opportunity for Halton to move forward in this area and overcome some of these challenges.

Recommendations:

- i) Increase employment opportunities, both paid and voluntary, for individuals with ASC;*
- ii) Maintain the Pan-Disability model within employment services;*
- iii) Increase day service venues to replicate good practice within the service across the borough as social enterprises, to complete a feasibility study in 2012; and*
- iv) Increase the awareness of the benefits of employing individuals with ASC to local employers.*

5.6 Employment and Autism

At the November meeting, Wesley Rourke, Operational Director for Economy, Enterprise and Property attended to give a presentation to the topic group. The presentation covered the following areas:

- Halton in context – employment, worklessness, not in Employment, Education or Training (NEET) and skills
- Business and Enterprise in Halton
- Background information to the service area and key priorities
- Six drivers of economic prosperity
- Employment, Learning and Skills division
- The Halton Employment Partnership (HEP)

- Apprenticeships
- What support is offered to people with ASC

5.6.1. Conclusion

Members of the topic group commented that the Council's input is acknowledged and recognised, especially in terms of enhancing the local community.

Recommendations:

- i) Further promote joint working between relevant teams and inform team work priorities and projects.***

5.7 National Autistic Society

During the January meeting, Clare Hughes, Regional Officer from the National Autistic Society attending the topic group and gave a presentation on the national and regional perspective of Autism.

Clare's role covers Cheshire and Merseyside and is funded by 10 Local Authorities to focus on developing local services and family support.

Clare explained how her role linked into the statutory guidance and gave examples of the local authority areas she had been working with.

5.7.1 Conclusion

From the presentation that Clare gave, Halton are in a good position regionally with some good examples of progress. The group also identified areas that require more work, in line with national and regional guidance, and these are detailed in the recommendations.

Recommendations:

- i) Increase low level support for people with ASC;***
- ii) Increase the local provision for individuals with Aspergers;***
- iii) Increase awareness of ASC within workforce, for example, teachers, social workers, health colleagues, etc.; and***
- iv) Collect data on the number of adults and children with ASC borough wide.***

6.0 Overall Conclusion

This scrutiny review has been both a successful and a worthwhile exercise in terms of covering all the outputs and outcomes from the initial topic brief and gaining a thorough knowledge of Autistic Spectrum Condition in Halton.

It is recognised that there has been some good progress made in terms of services for adults with Autism in Halton over the past year, although much more is also required. Two major milestones have been the establishment of the Positive Behaviour Support Service and the recruitment to the Practice Manager for Autism post, both of which have already had a positive impact on services.

There are recommendations for further improvement that have been identified from this scrutiny review and these have been arranged into an Action Plan at Annex 5 for ease of reference and monitoring.

TOPIC BRIEF

Topic Title:	Autism
Officer Lead:	Operational Director (Commissioning and Complex Care)
Planned start date:	June 2011
Target PPB Meeting:	March 2012

Topic Description and scope:

A review of current pathways to diagnosis and assessment for adults with autism spectrum conditions in Halton, focusing on understanding how localised services support these people and the implementation of the statutory guidance published for local authorities.

Why this topic was chosen:

In December 2010, the Department of Health issued statutory guidance and delivery plan for local authorities and NHS organisations to support the implementation of the nation autism strategy “Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives”. There is an expectation that local authorities will implement the requirements set out in the statutory guidance. A regional network group has been developed and this will provide an opportunity to monitor progress towards implementing the statutory guidance locally. The scrutiny review will provide a good opportunity to look at our baseline information in supporting people with autism spectrum conditions living in Halton.

Key outputs and outcomes sought:

- An understanding of Autism and an appreciation for the broad range of conditions that fall under the spectrum from low level to high functioning levels of autism
- Examine the effectiveness of the current pathways for diagnosis and assessment for adults with an autism spectrum condition in Halton
- An understanding of the Positive Behaviour Support Service and the benefits their interventions can bring to local service providers
- Consider national best practice in relation to pathways for diagnosis and assessment for adults with autism spectrum conditions
- Consider ways to continue to make improvements and enable Halton to fully implement the statutory guidance and delivery plan

Which of Halton’s 5 strategic priorities this topic addresses and the key objectives and improvement targets it will help to achieve:

Improving Health:

Key Objective A: To understand fully the causes of ill health in Halton and act together to improve the overall health and well-being of local people.

Key Objective B: To lay firm foundations for a healthy start in life and support those most in need in the community by maximising and promoting autonomy.

Key Objective C: To promote a healthy living environment and lifestyles to protect the health of the public, sustain individual good health and well-being and help prevent and efficiently manage illness.

Key Objective D: To reduce the burden of disease in Halton by concentrating on lowering the rates of cancer and heart disease, mental ill health and diabetes and addressing the health needs of older people.

Employment, Learning and Skills:

Key Objective C: To develop a culture where learning is valued and raise skill levels throughout the adult population and in the local workforce.

Key Objective D: To promote and increase the employability of local people and tackle barriers to employment to get more people into work.

Nature of expected/desired PPB input:

Member led scrutiny review of Autism.

Preferred mode of operation:

- Invite member from National Autistic Society to provide an overview of autism spectrum conditions and examples of areas of best practice nationally
- Meetings with/presentations from relevant officers within the Council to examine current practice regarding diagnosis and assessment pathways
- Talk from Positive Behaviour Support Service regarding the aims of their service, the type of training they can provide and support they offer to service providers who work with adults with autism spectrum conditions
- Site visit to Bredon respite provision, following receipt of training from the Positive Behaviour Support service

Agreed and signed by:

PPB chair

Officer

Date

Date

METHODOLOGY DETAIL**a) Presentations**

The following officers gave presentations as part of this scrutiny review:

Name of officer	Title of Presentation
Maria Saville, Principal Manager and Kath Devonshire, Practice Manager of the Positive Behaviour Support Service (PBSS)	An Introduction to Autistic Spectrum Condition
Paul McWade, Operational Director for Commissioning and Complex Care	Halton's Autism Strategy
John Williams, Practice Manager for Autism	Day Activities for People with Autism
Wesley Rourke, Operational Director for Employment, Enterprise and Property	Employment Opportunities in Halton
Clare Hughes, National Autistic Society	The National Perspective



Communities Directorate

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

Friday 9th September 2011

Independent Living Centre

Altered Images Salon

Shopmobility

Refectory Café, Norton Priory

Tea Room/Brewery, Norton Priory

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

INDEPENDENT LIVING CENTRE

The Independent Living Centre is based at Collier Street, Runcorn and provides a service for people with Profound and Multiple Learning Disabilities (PMLD). Prior to the Independent Living Centre opening, these service users were based at Astmoor Day Centre, which was a unit based within an industrial estate which is isolated from the local community.

Each of the service users has a Support Plan. Each Support Plan is unique to the service user and provides a photographic process for various catering tasks, such as making a cup of tea or making a cup cake. The Support Plan includes a task monitoring sheet for staff to complete, in order to monitor the progress of the service user in completing their designated tasks.

Halton Day Services has established a catering training course which is called Pebbles. Pebbles is a step by step catering programme, through which people learn the skills and knowledge required in catering. The programme begins with equipping service users with the basic skills for catering and then allows service users with the basic skills for catering and then allows service users to progress and acquire more skills and knowledge. The Pebbles programme is ran at several Day Services venues across Halton. Once the Pebbles course has been completed, service users are fully skilled and trained and are able to then work in the cafés ran by Halton Day Services, or in a café based in the community if they are able to successfully seek employment. By progressing through the Pebbles programme, it has allowed service users to take on a mentoring role to other service users and support them to progress through the training programme successfully.

On the day of our visit, the service users were making cupcakes which were subsequently being delivered and sold at the Norton Priory Open Day. One of the ladies suffers from sleep apnoea and needed to rest in between tasks. Another two service users will only stir the cake mixture 10 times before they need to rest. To accommodate this, staff separate out the tasks into 10 minute slots between those service users, to ensure they are able to be fully involved and engaged in the task, but are also able to rest as required.

The catering programme is managed by a professional chef and her previous employment history includes being a personal chef to Joan Collins.

The Independent Living Centre has also utilised the outside space available to grow flowers, fruit and vegetables, which are then used in other Halton Borough Council catering facilities including the various community cafes which are ran by Halton Day Services. The flowers and vegetables have been planted in raised beds, to allow full accessibility for all service users to get involved in planting and nurturing and extracting the produce. In addition to this, there is also the “Chucky Chicken” project. This project has re-homed

20 ex-battery hens. The eggs produced from the chickens are used by the various Day Services catering projects including Cup Cake Catering.

During the visit, one of the service users James showed us around the flower and vegetable beds. James was obviously very proud of what they were involved with at the Independent Living Centre.

DRAFT

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

ALTERED IMAGES SALON

The Altered Image Salon is based on Granville Street in Runcorn. The salon is centrally located between the High Street and Church Street, which provides access to a good footfall for the salon. The salon was quiet at the time of our visit. When no customers are booked in, the service users will practice the skills they have learnt on each other as practical experience.

All service users working in the salon have a portfolio, in which to record all of the training they have undertaken. All service users working in the salon are undertaking an adapted NVQ Level 1 Certificate and Health and Safety training.

There is a full rotation of staff in the salon, so there are different workers in the salon each day and they rotate the tasks they are responsible for in the salon. The service users are fully supported by trained stylists and beauty therapists.

The Altered Image salon offers a full range of hairdressing services at very reasonable prices. They also offer manicures and gel nails.

The salon is open Tuesday – Saturday, with late night opening on a Friday night and this has led to a lot of trade from people who would like to have a hair or beauty treatment for the weekend. Research was undertaken regarding the opening times of other salons in the area in order to be competitive and the prices for hair and beauty treatments are also competitive with other salons in the area.

The salon has had a lot of custom since its opening in August. Customers who have received a hair or beauty treatment have given good reviews of the service they received.

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

SHOPMOBILITY

The Shopmobility store is based in a retail unit in Halton Lea, Runcorn. Shopmobility is run by Eddie, who is an extremely committed and enthusiastic individual.

On the day of our visit, there were four service users working in the shop. The people working on the shop have also been customers of Shopmobility, who are gaining valuable work experience as well as people skills.

A team meeting is held each morning and at the meeting it is decided what jobs people would like to do that day. The tasks to be completed in the store include cleaning the shop, cleaning the scooters, ensuring the scooters are in full working order and inputting information onto the computer system.

There are some issues with some of the scooters in that their batteries are not holding their charge any more. This means that the customers have to be informed that they can only do short trips (no more than 30 minutes) on the scooters. New batteries cost between £300 - £400 each.

There are plans to purchase another four scooters in the near future. Also if funding can be secured, there is potential for a Shopmobility store to be opened in Widnes.

It has become apparent that the customers view the shop as more than just Shopmobility. The staff have found that they are able to help customers with some of their other queries and signpost to other shops and services, if they are unable to provide the equipment required themselves.

Within the Shopmobility store, there is a display cabinet which contains items which have been made at The Coach House (another Halton Day Services project). The articles include Baby Cakes, which are a cake shaped item made up nappies, babygrows, bibs and other useful baby items; handmade cards and other craft items. Councillor Lowe asked Jenny, one of the service users working at Shopmobility, if she also worked at The Coach House. Jenny replied that she used to work at The Coach House, but she doesn't have time anymore as she is so busy working at other places.

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

REFECTORY CAFÉ, NORTON PRIORY

Norton Priory is based near Manor Park in Runcorn. Members of the Scrutiny Review Committee went to the café for lunch.

A number of service users work in the café, as they will have completed the Pebbles catering programme and have acquired the standard of catering skills required for working the café. For those service users who are undertaking the Pebbles programme, to secure employment at Norton Priory Café is held in great esteem.

The café offers a range of hot and cold food and a selection of beverages. Members of the committee ordered a selection of meals from the menu and all were found to be of a high standard and reasonably priced.

The vegetables used by the café are grown by the Country Garden scheme as seen at the Independent Living Centre.

AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW SITE VISIT

TEA ROOM/BREWERY

The Cottage Tea Rooms are based on the grounds of Norton Priory in the walled gardens. The Cottage Tea Rooms also incorporates the micro-brewery and a gift shop. Attendees of the site visit were able to see how the micro-brewery operates and taste a sample of the beer being produced. The brewery project is supported by a Master Brewer, who is helping the service users to ensure all standards in the production of the beer are adhered to. The beer has its own branding of "Priory Ales". The beer is now available for sale at the Tunnel Top public house in Runcorn and will be offered to other local public houses to sell. In the near future, gift packs of the bottled beer will be available to purchase from the gift shop based within the Cottage Tea Rooms.

The Cottage Tea Rooms are open between 12pm – 3.50pm. On the day of the visit, there were four service users working in the tea rooms, with the assistance of two support workers. The service users were able to explain how much their job means to them and how much independence it has allowed them. One example of which was a young lady who now feels independent enough to move into her own tenancy in supported living accommodation.

CONCLUSION

Members of the Scrutiny Committee found the site visit to be a very positive and uplifting experience. There are obviously some excellent examples of services available for people with autism spectrum conditions to engage in across Halton. Service users are being equipped with life skills and experience, which will enable them to live more fulfilling and rewarding lives within their local community and wider.

All of the venues visited during the day were found to be managed to very high standard and providing excellent opportunities for people with autism spectrum conditions to engage in real work experience, rather than a tokenistic approach. The support staff working at each venue demonstrated real enthusiasm and motivation for the service they provide and are working daily to empower the individuals they are working with.

For many of the service users we met during the visit who are on the spectrum, their behaviour has changed dramatically since engaging in Day Services and helped them to increase their confidence, independence, knowledge and skill base, which will help them in their everyday lives.

Following the site visit, the overall opinion of all members of the Scrutiny Review Committee was that this work needs to continue and expand in Halton. The services currently provided have already received international recognition and is an area of best practice that the borough should be proud of.

The members of the Scrutiny Review Topic Group would like to extend their thanks to all of the venues visited, the service users and staff for taking time to talk through their experiences. A special thank you is also given to Eileen Clarke who shared not only her knowledge but her passion for the work of Halton Day Services.

Documents Considered including Best Practice within the review

National Guidelines:

- Fulfilling and Rewarding Lives: The Strategy for adults with Autism in England, Department of Health, 2010
- Draft Clinical guidelines for adults with Autism, NICE

Halton Borough Council documents:

- Draft Autism Strategy
- Corporate Plan – 2011 - 2016
- Sustainable Community Strategy – 2011 - 2026

**AUTISM SCRUTINY REVIEW
ACTION PLAN**

ANNEX 5

Action No.	Action	Responsible person	Timescale	Progress
1	Members to support the continued work of the Positive Behaviour Support Service (PBSS).	Members of the Health PPB	Bi-annually	Report due at the Health PPB on 6 th March 2012.
2	Halton's Autism Strategy to be approved and implemented by the ASC Strategic Group, Senior Management and Health Policy and Performance Board, Children's Trust, and Halton and St Helen's Clinical Commissioning Committee.	John Williams	2012/13	Due for approval by approximately April 2012.
3	Implementation of Autism Strategy Action Plan to be monitored and progress updates provided by the ASC Strategic Group	John Williams	Regularly throughout 2012/13	Will begin once Strategy is implemented.
4	Continue to improve engagement with parents/carers, building on the work that has already taken place.	John Williams	Quarterly	Consolidating links with HAFS/CHAPs, parents and carers to inform the development of services.
5	Continue and extend the work opportunities for individuals with ASC in Halton enhancing skills to achieve this.	Stiofan O'Suillibhan/ John Williams	Quarterly	Funding has been secured from the NHS to provide a dedicated resource to pull all voluntary and statutory bodies together and align their opportunities for employment. This would include the private, retail and social enterprise elements of Halton. This will be

				implemented through Training In Systematic Instruction (TSI). The driving force behind TSI is a positive and empowering values base. It places a positive expectation of people's potential to achieve - when we have taken notice of the tasks and environments that people are interested in.
6	Increase publicity about the good work that is being progressed in day services.	Stiofan O'Suillibhan	Bi-annually	Recent publicity includes work with MP Graham Evans about the sale of beer (made at the day service brewery) in a local pub the Tunnel Top and how this will develop into us making a sale in the bar at the Houses of Parliament. All beer has been made with the support of autistic people (this article was in the local paper during December 2011). The intranet is also fully utilised for publicity.
7	Source funding for new batteries for the shopmobility scooters.	Councillor E Cargill	Asap	It was decided that funding for scooters rather than just the batteries would be more efficient as they are similar prices. The Area Forum has agreed to pay two thirds and we are awaiting to hear from Halton Lea Area Forum regarding the remaining one third.
8	Increase employment opportunities	Stiofan O'Suillibhan/	Quarterly	Funding has been secured from the

	for individuals with ASC.	Wesley Rourke		NHS to provide a dedicated resource to pull all voluntary and statutory bodies together and align their opportunities for employment. This would include the private, retail and social enterprise elements of Halton. This will be implemented through Training In Systematic Instruction (TSI). The driving force behind TSI is a positive and empowering values base. It places a positive expectation of people's potential to achieve - when we have taken notice of the tasks and environments that people are interested in.
9	Maintain the Pan-Disability model within employment services.	Wesley Rourke	Annually	Review annually
10	Increase day service venues to replicate good practice within the service across the borough as social enterprises, to complete a feasibility study in 2012.	Stiofan O'Suillibhan	April 2012	Feasibility study to be completed by April 2012 which will then inform future developments.
11	Increase the awareness of the benefits of employing individuals with ASC to local employers.	Stiofan O'Suillibhan/ Wesley Rourke	Annually	Working with the voluntary sector, for example, Halton Speak Out. Could present report to ELS Policy and Performance Board.
12	Further promote joint working between relevant teams and inform	Stiofan O'Suillibhan/Wesley	Annually	Review annually

	team work priorities and projects.	Rourke		
13	Increase low level support for people with ASC	John Williams	Quarterly	Current pilot with Mental Health Outreach team and Community Bridge Builders.
14	Increase local provision for individuals with Aspergers	John Williams	Quarterly	On-going developments to provide information to feed into the commissioning of services.
15	Increase awareness of ASC within workforce, for example, teachers, social workers, health colleagues, etc.	Brian Hilton/ John Williams	Quarterly	ASC sub group for training is leading on the training needs of the workforce.
16	Collect data on the number of adults and children with ASC borough wide	John Williams	Quarterly	Collection of data from adult and children services.

DRAFT

REPORT TO: Executive Board

DATE: 14th June 2012

REPORTING OFFICER: Strategic Director Children and Enterprise

SUBJECT: Portas Pilot and High Street Innovation Fund

PORTFOLIO: Physical Environment

WARDS: Mersey

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 To advise the Executive Board of the recent submission for Portas Pilot funding
- 1.2 To advise Executive Board on the recent grant of £100,000 under the High Street Innovation Fund Initiative.
- 1.3 To seek views on how the High Street Innovation Fund Should be managed and allocated.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That Executive Board

- 1) notes the submission of a bid for Portas Pilot funding;**
- 2) approves the establishment of a Town Team for Runcorn;**
- 3) approves the total allocation of the High Street Innovation Fund to Runcorn Town centre; and**
- 4) invites the Runcorn Town Team to prepare a funding plan outlining how the High Street Innovation Fund could be spent.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

PORTAS PILOT BID

The Council made a bid to Government in March for Runcorn Town Centre to be nominated as a Portas Pilot Town Centre, to assist in the regeneration of the Town Centre. The Portas Pilot arose from a review Mary Portas submitted to Government in December 2011. The concept of forming a Town Team to improve town centre locations was

included within the 28 recommendations contained in the Portas Review. Government agreed to fund twelve pilots, with a maximum allocation of £100,000 per town team. (At the time of writing), Government will make a decision on the successful pilots in May. The interest in the funding has been significant and government has agreed to hold a further bidding round to select a further 12 pilots (deadline for receipt of applications is 30th June 2012).

Halton's bid for Runcorn, which included a supporting video, focused on making Runcorn Town Centre a unique destination for everyone by developing a mixed use leisure, business, retail and cultural offer. Emphasis was also placed on a longer term legacy and the attraction of visitors 'for the future'. The bid seeks to establish a more family friendly approach to the town centre which maximises the town's cultural and leisure assets whilst providing a retail offer that shoppers could not obtain by visiting large shopping malls and supermarkets.

A local community group, Hazlehurst Craft Studios also features in the bid as an example of where empty property can be brought back into use to provide affordable studio spaces for local Artists wishing to develop within a supportive and not for profit environment.

Although, the grant on offer is not huge, the actual process of developing the bid helped to reinforce good working relationships between the Council, its Partners and the local community.

A consultation event was held on 14th March at Churchill Hall, where local people provided suggestions on the make up of a Town Team (a pre-requisite, should the bid be successful). A list of potential representatives is contained in appendix 1.

The event was very positive with local people confirming that irrespective of whether the bid is successful, there is a real appetite to develop and contribute to the running of a Town Team.

High Street Innovation Fund

As part of the Government's response to the Portas Review, the Government also agreed to establish a £10 million fund to support Councils "In areas blighted by empty shops and recovering from the riots to help bring entrepreneurs back to their communities".

Halton has been allocated £100,000 to “work collaboratively with landlords to encourage them to contribute to supporting their new occupiers”. Funding will be revenue.

Although this is a borough wide allocation and not specifically for Runcorn, the Executive Board is asked to consider allocating the fund to Runcorn both to complement emerging regeneration activity in the town but also to consolidate the momentum gained in developing the Portas bid.

Furthermore, it may wish to consider giving responsibilities to any newly formed Town Team to draw up a funding plan to allocate this funding.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

If the Portas Pilot is successful, it will complement work the Council is doing to promote inward investment in Runcorn.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

The High Street Innovation Fund provides additional resources to assist in the future regeneration of the Borough’s town centres. It provides a useful albeit small pot of money to work with landlords and businesses within the Runcorn Town Centre to encourage potential investors to take up empty properties within the town centres. By allocating the resources to a Runcorn Town Team, it is proposed that this will reaffirm the Councils commitment to supporting Runcorn and will give the establishment of a town team added weight and influence.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL’S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

N/A

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

N/A

6.3 A Healthy Halton

N/A

6.4 A Safer Halton

N/A

6.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

The proposals will support the Council's Urban Renewal Priority by assisting in the future regeneration of Runcorn in creating a vibrant town centre and improving the immediate environment.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

Given the small amount of money available, there is the risk of raising expectations with the local community as to what can be done. However, through the establishment of a Town Team, this would be used as forum for agreeing what can be realistically achieved and managing expectations accordingly.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

Good work has already been undertaken to get the views from a broad range of local community groups and local businesses to obtain a consensus view which reflects needs of residents and employees in Runcorn.

9.0 REASON(S) FOR DECISION

The reason for this decision is based on an opportunity to link the High Street Innovation Fund to other regeneration activity taking place in Runcorn Town Centre.

10.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

The other option would be to allocate resources across other parts of the borough, but given this is a small amount of revenue funding, this approach could dilute any potential impact the funding might have. Therefore, it is proposed to concentrate the resource on one distinctive area – Runcorn Town Centre.

11.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

11.1 The result of the Portas Pilot bid are expected in May. The High Street Innovation Fund allocation is imminent. A town team would need to be set up. Therefore, September 1st 2012 is the anticipated start date.

12.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Portas Bid	5th Floor Municipal Building	Jennifer Carr

T

The following links provide further information of the PORTAS PILOT AND HIGH STREET INNOVATION FUND

<http://www.communities.gov.uk/documents/regeneration/pdf/2120019.pdf>

<http://www.communities.gov.uk/publications/regeneration/portaspilotsprospectus2>

**APPENDIX 1 – POTENTIAL RUNCORN TOWN TEAM
REPRESENTATIVES - SUGGESTIONS FROM CONSULTATION EVENT
ON 14TH MARCH 2012**

	Table 1	Table 2	Table 3	Table 4
1	HBC –Senior Officer (make decisions) Project Champion.	Chairman of Traders Association	HBC – Planning Department	Young People’s Rep.
2	Local Councillor	Voluntary Sector Representative	Bridgewater Canal Company (Peel Holdings?)	Church Rep/ Parish Church
3	A landlord (RSL = Commercial)	Local Resident	HBC Ward councillor	Comm Group Rep. (Advertise to get rep that covers ALL groups)
4	Head of Traders Forum	Rep from Youth Cabinet	Traders Forum representative	Residents (One from each of the three areas)
5	Rep of legal/banking community	Local police – Office in charge of PSCOs	Representative of local Voluntary Sector orgs.	Business Rep/The Arts
6	Youth Rep. (E.g. Power in Partnership young person) x2	Rep from faith sector	Job Centre Plus/HEP	Shop Rep. (Inc. landlords)
7	2 x local residents (1from town centre + 1 other)	HBC rep – Head of Planning	Young People’s Rep.	HBC - Planning
8	Community group rep.	HBC Ward councillor	John Bishop (Honorary)	Housing Assn Rep.
9	Community Sergeant/PSCO	Head Teacher of local school		

PROPOSED TOWN TEAM

1 Executive Board Member	Portfolio Holder Physical Environment
3 Councillors	Ward Councillors
2 residents	From Mersey Ward
2 Community Group Representatives	E.g. Faith sector
2 Traders and or businesses	For example Chair of Traders’ association plus a member
1 Local celebrity	To be determined
1 Young Persons’ Representative	To be determined

1 private sector land and property owner representative	E.g. Bridgewater Company
1 Schools Representative	Headteacher, Runcorn All Saints Primary
TOTAL: 14	
Advisors	
Police	For example, PCSO
Job Centre Plus	For example, Employment Advisor
Council Officers HBC	For example, planning, property, economic regeneration, community development
Housing Associations/RSL	

REPORT TO:	Executive Board
DATE:	14th June 2012
REPORTING OFFICER:	Strategic Director – Policy and Resources
PORTFOLIO:	Physical Environment
SUBJECT:	Halton Core Strategy – Post-Submission changes
WARDS:	Boroughwide

1.0 PURPOSE OF THE REPORT

- 1.1 This report seeks approval to consult on the changes required to be made to the Halton Core Strategy (**Appendix B**). Appendix B sets out three types of changes recommended to be made to the Core Strategy;
- 'Main Modifications' (MM)** identified as necessary following the examination hearing sessions into the soundness of the document and are required to make it capable of being found sound.
 - Submission minor changes (SM)**, being those identified prior to formal submission (as set out in the submission document CS4 – Schedule of Minor Changes (Sept 2011) and
 - Post submission minor changes (MC)** identified through the examination process or required as a result of the publication of the National Planning Policy Framework (27th March) and the Town and Country Planning (Local Planning) (England) Regulations 2012.

The Core Strategy will then progress to adoption after the period of public consultation.

2.0 RECOMMENDATION: That Council be recommended to:

- (1) Approve the changes to be made to the Halton Core Strategy (APPENDIX B) for the purposes of a six week period of public consultation.**
- (2) Agree that further minor editorial amendments as required be made to the Halton Core Strategy by the Operational Director for Policy, Planning and Transportation in consultation with the Portfolio Holder and the Leader of the Council, before commencing the period of public consultation.**
- (3) Agree that the Core Strategy be brought back before Council later in 2012 for formal adoption as part of the Development Plan for Halton.**

3.0 SUPPORTING INFORMATION

- 3.1 On 30th June 2011, approval was received from the Executive Board (ratified by Council on the 20th July 2011) to submit the Halton Core Strategy Revised Proposed Submission Document to the Secretary of State to commence the examination into the soundness of the document. On 22nd September 2011, the Halton Core Strategy was submitted to the Secretary of State for Communities and Local Government for independent examination. The Secretary of State appointed Planning Inspector Mr Robert Yuille MSc DipTP MRTPI to conduct the examination.
- 3.2 The main part of the examination commenced on 28th November and lasted until 22nd December 2011, which consisted of public hearing sessions held at Runcorn Town Hall. The main issues discussed at the hearing sessions were set by the Planning Inspector prior to their commencement. These were as follows:
- Housing Provision
 - Provision for Housing Needs
 - Provision for Employment and Economic Development
 - Key Areas of Change
 - Green Belt Review
 - Liverpool John Lennon Airport Extension
 - Waste and Minerals
 - Sustainable Development and Climate Change
 - Contaminated Land
- 3.3 The Council and the other interested parties who wished to attend the Examination Hearing Sessions were requested to make written submissions to the examination, stating their position and in the case of the other participants, the changes they were seeking through the hearing sessions. These formed the basis of the discussions at the examination hearing sessions.
- 3.4 Discussions at the hearing sessions centred around total housing provision (increase from 9,000 to 9,930 to accord with outgoing RSS), the proposed housing split between Runcorn and Widnes and the interrelated issue of the potential need for a Green Belt Review to ensure sufficient housing land exists. The majority of participants argued that the number of new homes to be provided in Widnes over the plan period should be greater, reflecting a number of factors including: the current population split between Runcorn and Widnes which is approximately 50:50, past high delivery rates of homes in Widnes and the balance of employment land (and hence new jobs) being greater in Widnes. The Inspector found that the part of the Council's evidence base for the proposed split of new homes of 57% Runcorn : 43% Widnes/Hale was unreliable and could not solely form the basis of the Core Strategy policy split for housing provision, suggesting an early review of the Green Belt would be necessary to bolster supply in Widnes / Hale.

3.5 As a consequence the Inspector held an additional hearing session to consider the distribution of housing provision between Runcorn and Widnes at which the Council presented further evidence to support its position. As a result the Examination has concluded that the Council's proposed 57:43 (Runcorn:Widnes) split is the most appropriate. However the Inspector also expressed concerns about the makeup of the identified housing supply, especially concerning the proportion of urban greenspace sites included in the supply and went on to conclude that the overall supply is likely to be insufficient to meet the overall housing policy requirement to 2028 and as such additional development land will be needed.

3.6 After the close of the hearing sessions, the Inspector wrote to the Council on the 12th January 2012 recommending that two key (main change) modifications be made to the Core Strategy to enable the plan to be capable of being found "sound". These changes were to:

- (1) Enshrine the percentage split in housing provision between Runcorn and Widnes/Hale into a policy requirement within the document, and
- (2) Include a reference to an early partial review of Green Belt boundaries to serve the needs of Widnes/Hale.

3.7 The Chief Executive, following consultation with the Leader and Portfolio holder, replied to the Inspector's letter confirming that he had instructed officers to draft the necessary changes to address his outstanding substantive concerns, undertake the required sustainability and habitats regulations appraisals and to complete our necessary internal procedures to secure Council approval for the further round of public consultation. As such, officers have drafted amendments to the Core Strategy which form Appendix B to this report. The amendments seek to overcome the Inspector's concerns as outlined in the previous paragraph.

3.8 In addition to the changes arising from the hearing sessions, the National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) was published on 27th March 2012. The Inspector has requested that a further modification be made to the Core Strategy to incorporate a policy concerning the "presumption in favour of sustainable development". This will provide a direct link between the plan and the NPPF, detailing how the presumption will be applied in Halton. The incorporation of the Inspector's recommendations has resulted in the following policies being substantially changed and these are included as Appendix A for information and completeness:

- CS1: Halton's Spatial Strategy
- CS2: Presumption in Favour of Sustainable Development
- CS3: Housing Supply and Locational Priorities
- CS6: Green Belt

Other policies, notably CS5 and CS13 also contain Main Modifications, as set out in Appendix B.

Sustainability Appraisal and Habitat Regulations Assessment have been undertaken on the changes to the Core Strategy and the outcome of the appraisals has been fed into the document.

- 3.9 The Inspector has also stated that as part of the re-consultation, the opportunity be taken to seek views on any implications that the NPPF and the recent "Planning policy for traveller sites" may have on the strategy.

Next steps

- 3.10 Once approval to re-consult is received from full Council, the intention is to undertake a six week period of public consultation commencing on 20th July and ending on 31st August. Comments will be invited on the changes that have been made since the Core Strategy was submitted to the Secretary of State in September 2011, and on the document's consistency with the NPPF and the new national planning policy for traveller sites.
- 3.11 After the consultation, the Council will compile any representations received and provide an initial response to the Inspector. The Inspector will then consider the points made in the representations before producing his report into the soundness of the Halton Core Strategy. At present it is anticipated that we will receive this report in September/October. After the Inspector's report has been received and assuming the report is favourable, the Core Strategy will return to the Executive Board and Council to gain approval to adopt the plan so that it becomes part of the development plan for Halton. Timetabling suggests that the Core Strategy will be adopted in late autumn.

4.0 POLICY IMPLICATIONS

- 4.1 The Core Strategy is the central policy document within Halton's Statutory Development Plan / Local Plan (previously known as the Local Development Framework). The Core Strategy is more than a planning document: it is a significant corporate policy document and as such, it will have widespread policy implications for the Council and its partners. The Core Strategy has been in production since 2006 and therefore it is highly important that the Council presents a document that the Inspector finds capable of recommending for adoption. This will enable the Council to progress other documents within the Local Development Framework, having the Core Strategy as the long term planning policy basis for Halton.

5.0 OTHER IMPLICATIONS

- 5.1 No other implications to the Council have been identified.

6.0 IMPLICATIONS FOR THE COUNCIL'S PRIORITIES

6.1 Children and Young People in Halton

A significant component of the content of the Core Strategy is aimed at supporting raising aspirations of younger people, and supporting the provision of opportunities for them to enter further education or employment. The Plan also addresses the need to encourage and provide opportunities for children and younger people to access and participate in physically active, healthy lifestyles.

6.2 Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton

One of the main thrusts of the Core Strategy is to support the enhancement of the Borough's economy and hence deliver economic growth. The Core Strategy also aims to consolidate and enhance linkages to the wider sub-region and deliver the economic benefits of Halton's advantageous geographic location.

6.3 A Healthy Halton

The Core Strategy contains a number of policies intended to directly or indirectly contribute to addressing the Borough's health problems. The SCS priority for a healthier Halton is strongly reflected across a number of policies, including through the maintenance of well-designed places and spaces, support for accessible sustainable travel options and through the provision of a healthy, green local environment. The Core Strategy includes policy CS22: Health and Well-being which specifically looks to support healthy environments and lifestyles in the Borough. No changes have been made to this policy as a result of the Examination hearing sessions.

6.4 A Safer Halton

Making Halton safer is a key consideration for the Core Strategy, which aims to ensure that Halton's communities, businesses and visitors enjoy access to a safe and sustainable physical environment with natural and man-made risks and hazards being minimised. A number of policies seek to create and sustain safer environments, which are well designed, well built, well maintained and valued by all members of society.

6.5 Halton's Urban Renewal

The Core Strategy's Key Areas of Change highlight areas which will be subject to concentrated renewal. The other policies in the Plan seek to support the renewal and/or enhancement of the Borough's green and built environment, with a particular focus on housing areas, employment land and the Borough's town centres.

7.0 RISK ANALYSIS

- 7.1 By consulting upon the requirement that the Core Strategy includes a commitment to Green Belt Review around Widnes/Hale, there is the potential that any consultation may generate significant new representations from the public and other interested parties. It will be for the Planning Inspector when compiling his report to consider whether any representations received raise any new issues and whether the Core Strategy would benefit from further changes in response to the points raised.

8.0 EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES

- 8.1 It is not foreseen that the changes required by the Inspector will have a differential negative impact on the protected characteristics of the communities of Halton. Equality Impact Assessments have previously been undertaken on the Core Strategy at the Preferred Options, Proposed Submission and Revised Proposed Submission stages. No significant foreseeable impacts were identified at any of these stages.

9.0 REASON(S) FOR DECISION

- 9.1 A considerable amount of time and resources have been invested in the production of the Core Strategy since work commenced on the document in 2006. Whilst the Council sought to resist the requirement to commit to an early Green Belt Review during the Examination Hearing Sessions and felt that the position in the plan could be justified, the requirement to include the housing delivery backlog accrued between 2003-2010 against the RSS requirement has placed further pressure on the available housing supply in Widnes/Hale. There is therefore greater reasoning behind the need for a Green Belt Review specific to Widnes/Hale within the plan period of the Core Strategy. As such, the recommended changes are necessary so that the Core Strategy can move towards adoption.

10.0 ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED AND REJECTED

- 10.1 There are two potential alternative options available to the Council. The first would be to resist the major changes sought by the Inspector regarding prescribing the split in housing provision between Runcorn and Widnes and the commitment to an early Green Belt Review. Following the recommendation of the Inspector, this is highly likely to render the plan incapable of adoption. As such, the Council could immediately withdraw the Halton Core Strategy and redraft the plan based on an alternative evidence base. This would result in a lengthy delay to achieving an adopted Development Plan for the Borough, including the potential for further challenges to the approach being promoted as the process is extended with the risk that any new updated evidence could potentially only support the same conclusions as today.

10.2 Alternatively, the Council could delay making a decision on whether to accept the Inspector's changes given the impending revocation of Regional Strategies. Consultation into the environmental impacts of the revocation ended in January 2012. After the consultation responses have been considered, it is anticipated that the Government will quickly move to formally repeal the regional tier of planning policy. The intention and legislation to do this already exists in the Localism Act, which was enacted in November 2011. The revocation of Regional Strategies would allow the Council to determine its own local housing requirement figure, without needing to justify a departure from the North West Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) figure for Halton. The backlog in housing delivery which has been accrued against the RSS requirement could also be discounted. The Council could then make changes to the plan based on a lower housing requirement figure which may not necessitate the need for a review of Green Belt boundaries. This option would also lead to further delays to the process whilst the Council awaits the revocation of RSS. This approach runs the risk of the Inspector deciding to close the Examination and issue an unfavourable report on the basis of the Plan before him now. Alternatively, the Inspector could consider the implications of the revocation of RSS and still come to the conclusion that an immediate Green Belt Review is required.

11.0 IMPLEMENTATION DATE

11.1 It is envisaged that the six week consultation on the changes to the Halton Core Strategy will take place during July-August 2012. After the close of the consultation, all responses received will be forwarded to the Planning Inspector who will consider the Council's proposed changes and the points raised during the consultation. He will determine whether any further changes are required to the Core Strategy to make the document sound, before issuing his Inspector's Report into the whole of the plan.

11.2 After this report has been received, the Council will move to adopt the Halton Core Strategy and this is anticipated to occur in late autumn 2012. Once adopted, the policies within the document will then replace certain policies of the current Halton UDP and be used for development management purposes in the determination of planning applications and to direct development to the most appropriate locations in accordance with the adopted spatial strategy for the Borough.

12.0 LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Halton Core Strategy <u>Revised</u> Proposed Submission Document Supporting Documents (May 2011)	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Executive Board Report – Halton	Places, Economy and	Alasdair Cross

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Core Strategy – Halton Core Strategy – Submission to the Secretary of State (30 th June 2011)	Transport Team, Municipal Building	
Halton Borough Council Hearing Statements: Issues 1-9	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Other Parties' Hearing Statements: Issues 1-9	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Letter from Planning Inspector regarding the need for changes (12 th January 2012) and Schedule of Modifications	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Letter from David Parr in response to the Inspector (27 th January 2012)	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Habitat Regulations Assessment of Changes, February 2012	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Sustainability Assessment of Changes, May 2012	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
National Planning Policy Framework 2012	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Planning policy for traveller sites	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
The Town and Country Planning (Local Planning) (England) Regulations 2012	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross
Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004	Places, Economy and Transport Team, Municipal Building	Alasdair Cross

APPENDIX A

Core Strategy policies subject to the most extensive changes.

(Presented as 'track changes' as proposed to be published for a 6 week period of public consultation)

CS1 – Halton's Spatial Strategy

CS2 – Sustainable Development

CS3 – Housing Supply and Locational Priorities

CS6 – Green Belt

4 CSI: HALTON'S SPATIAL STRATEGY

- 4.1 The Spatial Strategy flows from the Vision for Halton. It expresses how we will achieve what we want to deliver over the plan period, taking into consideration the existing physical and social environment of the Borough, and how we intend to meet the Strategic Objectives. The Spatial Strategy sets out how Halton will change over the coming years; where change will happen, when it will happen and how ~~this is to~~ it will be delivered.

Policy CSI: Halton's Spatial Strategy

To achieve the Vision for Halton to 2028, new development should deliver:

- ~~9,000~~ 9,930 net additional dwellings
- Approximately ~~295~~ 313 ha (gross) of land for employment purposes
- About 35,000 sqm of town centre convenience / comparison goods retailing
- About 22,000 sqm of retail warehousing

Specific principles to guide the location, timing and delivery of the above development are set out in policies CS3-CS5.

1. Urban Regeneration and Key Areas of Change

The Spatial Strategy for Halton is focused around a balanced mix of prioritised urban regeneration supported by appropriate levels of greenfield expansion. The strategy will largely be realised by the delivery of four “Key Areas of Change” across the Borough where the majority of new development will be located. The four areas are:

- 3MG, (Ditton) in Widnes,
- South Widnes,
- West Runcorn,

~~Involving the~~ (a) — r Regeneration of previously developed (brownfield) land within the existing urban area as Key Areas of Change, ~~at:~~

~~3MG, (Ditton) in Widnes, South Widnes, West Runcorn; and~~

- East Runcorn

~~Delivering~~ Ggreenfield expansion ~~involving including~~ the completion of the proposals for Runcorn New Town and further extension ~~to the east~~ of Runcorn, ~~as a Key Area of Change at:~~

- ~~East Runcorn~~

~~—~~ This specific Key Area of Change includes the ~~designation~~ allocation of a Strategic Site encompassing Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus and Daresbury Park.

Specific proposals for these areas and the type and amount of development they will accommodate are set out in policies CS8-CS11.

2. Brownfield Focus (beneficial and efficient use of existing sites)

Outside of the Key Areas of Change, the re-use of previously developed land will be prioritised, notably where regenerating or bringing sites back into use will bring wider benefits to the Borough. Important green infrastructure within the urban area will be protected from detrimental development to ensure its value, both individually and as part of a network, is retained.

3. Halton's rural areas and Green Belt

The rural character and green infrastructure of the Borough's villages and Green Belt will predominantly be maintained. ~~In addition, the~~ The housing land supply position ~~may warrant a general~~ indicates that a partial review of Green Belt boundaries to serve the development needs of Widnes and Hale will be required in the early part of the plan period prior to 2028. ~~Additionally, A~~ An area of search for a possible minor amendment of the Green Belt boundary is proposed in the west of the Borough to facilitate the planned runway extension at Liverpool John Lennon Airport.

[More detail regarding Halton's Green Belt is set out in CS6.](#)

[Specific proposals relating to Liverpool John Lennon Airport are set out in CS17.](#)

Justification

- 4.2 Informed by Halton's existing characteristics, issues and opportunities as detailed in Halton's Story of Place, the Spatial Strategy has been developed to focus future development on areas where there is an impetus or a need for change. A number of areas of the Borough such as industrial parts of Widnes and New Town areas in Runcorn have not benefitted from sufficient investment for a number of years and are now in need of renewal. Development over the plan period ~~will predominantly be should~~ focused on renewing Halton's urban landscape through the re-use of previously developed (brownfield) land, including derelict sites and those with a history of contamination particularly at South Widnes and West Runcorn. Specific policies deal with when this change will happen. By seeking wherever possible to concentrate development in brownfield regeneration areas, the roles of Runcorn and Widnes as important towns in the sub-region will be maintained and secured for the future. This will ensure that the Borough is able to meet the day-to-day needs of its current and future population by providing ample employment opportunities, a range of high quality services and facilities and a choice of homes.
- 4.3 Despite the priority to renew and improve the Borough's urban landscape through new development, it is apparent ~~through the evidence base~~ that not all future development can be delivered on brownfield land. Despite the Borough's strong record for bringing brownfield land back into use, much of the remaining previously developed land is highly constrained through contamination or other factors which affect development viability, ~~therefore~~ reducing the ~~realistic~~ amount of brownfield land which can realistically be brought back into beneficial use. At 2010, there ~~are~~ were no further housing renewal programmes, such as that nearing completion at Castlefields (Runcorn), which are planned to take place within the lifetime of the Core Strategy. In addition to the limitations on the re-use of brownfield land, development opportunities in the Borough are constrained (particularly in Widnes) by tightly defined Green Belt boundaries, limited scope for infilling, coupled with the Mersey Estuary dissecting the Borough, it follows that there are not a wide variety of strategic options available to accommodate future growth requirements. However, Halton must plan for the level of development needed to secure the future prosperity of the Borough and to ensure that the services, facilities and opportunities on offer serve Halton's population over the lifetime of the plan.
- 4.4 During the earlier stages of the Core Strategy's production, three different options to deliver the required level of growth were consulted on; **Sustainable Urban Extensions, Brownfield Only Focus** and a **Mix of Brownfield and Urban Extension**. Following public consultation, the development of the evidence base and refinement of the options, the option of combining a brownfield approach,

coupled with an extension of the Borough's existing built up area to the east of Runcorn emerged as the preferred option, and the most balanced approach to both deliver the amount of new development needed whilst contributing towards the achievement of the Vision and Strategic Objectives for the Borough. ~~Alongside the Council deciding to adopt this approach, the housing land supply in Widnes/Hale, has been demonstrated to be under pressure over the Core Strategy plan period, leading to the requirement to review the existing Green Belt boundaries around these communities.~~ However, the Examination into this Plan concluded that the land supply position was such that the preferred approach be modified to include the provision for further greenfield extension(s) to meet the needs of Widnes / Hale through an early partial Green Belt review as part of the subsequent Site Allocations Local Plan

- 4.5 The land proposed to be developed at East Runcorn is predominantly greenfield land beyond Runcorn's current built up urban area. Evidence from both the Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment¹ (SHLAA) (2010) and the Joint Employment Land and Premises Study² (JELPS) (2010) indicate that without the inclusion of this area of the Borough, there would be insufficient land for new residential and employment development needed over the plan period. ~~Similarly, the housing land supply evidenced in the SHLAA 2010 (as summarised in Table 1 below) details that just over a quarter of the Borough's potential supply lies in Widnes/Hale. The land supply position highlights the need to review Widnes' Green Belt boundaries to consider making further land available for housing development.~~ Similarly, the housing land supply evidenced in the SHLAA 2010 (as summarised in Table 1 below) details that just over a quarter of the Borough's potential supply lies in Widnes/Hale. This supply is to be bolstered by the identification and release of additional land for development currently within the adopted Green Belt. The scale and location of this release will be determined in a partial Green Belt review as part of the subsequent Site Allocations Local Plan.

	Greenfield / Brownfield land	Potential Housing Supply (SHLAA 2010)			Identified Employment Land Supply 2010		
		Dwellings	Halton %	Area %	Ha.	Halton %	Area %
3MG	Green	0		0%	24.8		26%
	Brown	0		0%	70.0		74%
		0	0%		94.8	48%	
South Widnes	Green	0		0%	15.8		61%
	Brown	876 741		100%	9.9		39%
		876 741	8% 7%		25.7	13%	
Widnes / Hale (ALL)	Green	1,466		48% 50%	40.6		32%
	Brown	1,595 1,460		52% 50%	86.8		68%
		3,061 2,926	27%		127.4	64%	
East Runcorn	Green	3,024		100%	49.2		100%
	Brown	0		0%	0		0%
					49.2	25%	

¹ HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010~~11~~

² BE Group (2010) Joint Employment Land and Premises Study

	Greenfield / Brownfield land	Potential Housing Supply (SHLAA 2010)			Identified Employment Land Supply 2010		
		Dwellings	Halton %	Area %	Ha.	Halton %	Area %
		3,024	27% 28%				
West Runcorn	Green	75		4%	0		0%
	Brown	2,058 2,013		96%	0.3		100%
		2,133 2,088	19%		0.3	0%	
Runcorn (ALL)	Green	5,409 5,276		66% 67%	7.0		10%
	Brown	2,798 2,653		34% 33%	63.4		90%
		8,207 7,929	73%		70.4	36%	
HALTON (ALL)	Green	6,875 6,742		61% 62%	47.6		24%
	Brown	4,393 4,113		39% 38%	150.2		76%
		11,268 10,855	100%		197.8	100%	

Table 1: Distribution of Identified Development Potential as at April 2010

- 4.6 The strategy for development in Halton over the Core Strategy period should be viewed as the next phase in the development of the Borough, and a continuation of previous strategies as implemented in the 2005 Halton Unitary Development Plan (UDP) and the 1996 Halton Local Plan. For instance, the impetus to develop land at East Runcorn dates back to the New Town Master Plan and its amendments³, where the proposals were extended to incorporate land beyond the areas of Windmill Hill and Murdishaw primarily to accommodate a greater number and range of dwellings. This area began to be developed in the late 1980s to form the residential area of Sandymoor. In Widnes, pockets of greenfield land lay between the existing urban area and the Green Belt surrounding the north of the Borough, and these areas were released for development in the later phases of the 2005 UDP, where sites within the urban area were brought forward first. Aside from the urban Key Areas of Change which present opportunities for brownfield development, there is not an abundance of sites within the urban area with the ability to deliver significant development, particularly residential development.
- 4.7 Table 1 sets out the land supply position for residential and employment purposes at April 2010. This demonstrates that almost three quarters of the potential housing supply identified lies south of the river, with previously identified land accounting for only ~~38~~ 39% of the potential total. For employment land there is marginally more land available in Widnes, however this supply is concentrated in a limited number of large sites forming the 3MG development, much of which is expected to be developed within the first five years of the plan period.
- 4.8 The Council has commissioned a number of research studies to quantify the demand and need for different classes of development across the Borough. ~~For housing, these indicate that demand for additional~~ These demonstrate that the

³ Runcorn Development Corporation (1967) Runcorn New Town Master Plan

provision of new housing can have wider benefits than simply providing accommodation and that over the plan period new supply is likely to be skewed to should favour Runcorn which should account for about 57% of the total, with Widnes and Hale accounting for accommodating the remaining 43%.

4.9 Housing delivery over the current RSS policy period from 2003 to 2010 has seen marginally more dwellings constructed in Widnes (2,135) than in Runcorn (1,469), however Runcorn has seen 974 demolitions and other losses compared to only 65 in Widnes, leaving a large disparity in the net dwelling gain. This differential sees Widnes some 570 units ahead of target (assuming a 43:57 split from 2003) and Runcorn some 1,500 behind target giving an overall borough shortfall of 930 units.

4.84.10 For retail, the studies indicate greater expenditure headroom to support new floorspace arising in Widnes.

4.11 The strategy identifies four **Key Areas of Change** that will be the initial focus for new development and where the biggest transformation of the current Borough's landscape at 2010 is expected to occur. These key areas are seen as fundamental to the longer term development of the Borough and in most cases represent existing areas where impetus for change already exists, through priority projects or support from the development industry. Table 2 below illustrates the anticipated quantum and distribution of development / development land across Halton to 2028.

	WIDNES / HALE				RUNCORN				TOTAL
	KEY Key Area of Change			TOTAL	Key Area of Change		Other *	TOTAL	
	3MG	South Widnes	Other *		West Runcorn	East Runcorn			
Housing (net dwelling gain)	--	400	3,500 3,470	3,900 3,870 (43%)	1,500	2,800	800 1,760	5,100 6,060 (57%)	9,000 9,930 (100%)
Employment (Ha)	99 103	30 54	28 32	189 (61%)	27 26	66	45 32	124 (39%)	295.0 313
'Town Centre' Retail (sqm)		25,000		25,000	5,000		5,000	10,000	35,000
Retail Warehousing (sqm)		19,000		19,000			3,000	3,000	22,000

* Other may include currently unidentified 'windfall' sites that may arise within Key Areas of Change.

Table 2: Anticipated Distribution of Development / Development Land 2010 to 2028

Where are the Key Areas of Change and why have they been chosen?

4.94.12 The Key Areas of Change in Halton have been identified as:

- **3MG** (the Mersey Multimodal Gateway) at Ditton in Widnes.
- **South Widnes** – including Widnes Town Centre, Widnes Waterfront and the regeneration area of West Bank.
- **West Runcorn** – including Runcorn Old Town, Runcorn Waterfront and the Mersey Gateway Port (Weston Docks).

- **East Runcorn** – covering Daresbury Park, Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus and Sandymoor.

3MG, Widnes

- ~~4.104.13~~ 4.114.13 The existing strategic rail freight interchange in Ditton, Widnes known as **3MG** (Mersey Multimodal Gateway) has been operational since 2006, and is well located in relation to the strategic road network, West Coast Main Line (WCML) rail access, the Port of Liverpool, and the expanding cargo facility at Liverpool John Lennon Airport. The site is a key location for logistics and distribution in the North West and when fully developed, offers the potential to deliver up to 5,000 jobs in this expanding sector. Whilst part of the site is already well established as an operational freight facility, there remains significant development potential to the west of the existing rail freight facility where there is scope for similar employment uses.
- ~~4.114.14~~ 4.114.14 Support for the development and expansion of intermodal freight facilities such as 3MG reflects national and regional priorities to facilitate a shift in the movement of freight from road based transportation to sustainable modes. The 3MG site is currently connected via the WCML to the markets of the South East of England and to the European continent and its importance and continued expansion is supported by the ~~shadow~~-Liverpool City Region Local Enterprise Partnership who secured Regional Growth Fund monies in 2011 to further enhance its connectivity and capacity.

South Widnes

- ~~4.124.15~~ 4.124.15 The South Widnes Key Area Change is made up of three component parts which abut each other along the southern edge of Widnes, adjacent to the key route of the A568. **Widnes Town Centre** is the largest Town Centre in the Borough and home to a substantial retail offer. Evidence from Halton's Retail and Leisure Study⁴ suggests that there is potential to expand the ~~bulky goods~~retail warehousing (DIY and gardening products, furniture, carpets, electrical goods, office supplies and toys) retail offer in the town centre, hence the requirement for the identified level of additional floorspace.
- ~~4.134.16~~ 4.134.16 The area known as **Widnes Waterfront** adjoins the Town Centre and covers the area south of Fiddlers Ferry Road and east of Ashley Way. Predominantly an employment area, the site's prominence in the Borough will be boosted in the future given the area's proximity to the new river crossing after the implementation of the Mersey Gateway Project. The area has been the focus of regeneration efforts in recent years, mainly towards the west, however, there is potential for the remainder of the area to offer a renewed employment offer.
- ~~4.144.17~~ 4.144.17 The **West Bank** area is situated to the west of Widnes Waterfront and currently comprises a variety of different land uses, with industrial and commercial to the north and a residential neighbourhood to the south. There is the scope for substantial reconfiguration of this area following the implementation of the Mersey Gateway Project.

West Runcorn

- ~~4.154.18~~ 4.154.18 The West Runcorn Key Area of Change includes the retail and leisure area of **Runcorn Old Town**. Although Runcorn Old Town centre is an important convenience centre in its local catchment, the centre was adversely affected by the

⁴ GVA (2009) Halton Retail and Leisure Study, para 11.42, page 132

development of its larger New Town neighbour, Halton Lea, and at present lacks a defined role. There is definite scope and impetus to build a complementary relationship for Runcorn Old Town with Halton Lea, centred ~~around-on~~ the evening economy and cultural uses in the centre. Longer term redevelopment opportunities for Runcorn Old Town centre are related to the Mersey Gateway Project which will create better linkages and connectivity between the waterfront area and Runcorn Train Station on the WCML.

4.164.19 Lying to the west of Runcorn Old Town centre, adjacent to ~~the Riverside College Campus and~~ recent waterside housing developments, lies **Runcorn Waterfront** a key development site anticipated to come forward for a mix of residential and commercial uses during the plan period.

4.174.20 Towards the south of the West Runcorn Key Area of Change, the **Mersey Gateway Port** (previously known as Weston Docks) offers the opportunity to create a civil waterway port offering improved road, rail, inland waterway and sea freight logistics. The realisation of this site's potential will further strengthen and expand the Borough's growing specialism in the logistics and distribution sector.

East Runcorn

4.184.21 The East Runcorn area can be split into two distinct sections – the predominantly residential area at **Sandymoor** and the area of employment focus at Daresbury, divided between the business community at **Daresbury Park** and the nationally significant science and research centre at **Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus**. The delivery of an extension to Runcorn's urban area represents an opportunity to integrate the existing employment area with the rest of the Borough, whilst additionally making a significant contribution towards achieving the Borough's aims in terms of securing future economic prosperity and offering opportunities to diversify the skills base.

4.194.22 Within the East Runcorn Key Area of Change, part of the ~~Daresbury~~ area is being allocated as a Strategic Site as it is a key component in Halton's future development and will see substantial change over the lifetime of the Core Strategy. Alongside the expansion of the employment offer, a new residential community is also being promoted at Daresbury Strategic Site, which will not only help to meet the housing needs of the Borough's residents, but will also connect the two existing employment areas through shared amenities and new transport routes. The residential area at Sandymoor, to the west of Daresbury, comprises approximately 147 hectares of land, of which 46 hectares have already been developed⁵. This comprehensive ~~re~~development of the Sandymoor area will continue, creating a mixed and sustainable community supported by the facilities and services needed by local residents.

Outside of the Key Areas of Change

4.204.23 Outside of the identified Key Areas of Change, the evidence base underpinning the Core Strategy indicates that there is scope to make more efficient use of already developed areas of the Borough, bringing benefits to the Borough's existing communities. In line with the spatial priorities enshrined in national planning policy, the reuse of previously used land and buildings ~~in~~ across the rest of Halton are high priorities for accommodating new development. Bringing underused and

⁵ HBC (2009) Sandymoor Supplementary Planning Document

redundant sites back into beneficial use will have positive effects on existing surrounding communities.

- 4.214.24 Halton's ~~existing~~ network of green infrastructure will ~~continue~~ remain and be expanded, where appropriate, to serve the leisure and recreation needs of the population and support the Borough's biodiversity.
- 4.224.25 The rural character and setting of the Borough's villages and areas of open countryside will be maintained with limits on new development. In order to achieve this, the Green Belt will continue to be largely protected in accordance with national planning policy to prevent uncoordinated expansion of urban areas which result in the loss of strategic gaps between settlements. ~~In addition, should the~~ The existing housing land supply within the Borough ~~warrant it, indicates that~~ a partial review of the extent of the Green Belt ~~may will~~ be required during the plan period, ~~particularly~~ to ensure adequate land to meet development needs of the communities ~~north of the river of~~ Widnes and Hale. ~~It is proposed that~~ Any such a review will be undertaken ~~in the early part of the Core Strategy plan period~~ as part of ~~the~~ a subsequent Site Allocations ~~DPD~~ Local Plan. Further detail on the future role of Halton's Green Belt is detailed in policy CS6. In addition, ~~M~~ minor changes to the Green Belt boundary at the western extent of the Borough will be considered to facilitate the proposed runway extension at Liverpool John Lennon Airport, and this issue will be addressed in a later DPD. ~~Greater detail on the development of the airport is provided in policy CS17.~~
- 4.234.26 The character of Hale Village which is inset within the Green Belt, will need to be carefully managed like the other villages, with particular respect to its close proximity to Liverpool John Lennon Airport. As the towns of Runcorn and Widnes will be the focus of development for the Core Strategy, the Green Belt will play a pivotal role in maintaining the setting of the Borough's rural assets and providing a distinct boundary to the built up area. The character and setting of the rural villages of Moore, Daresbury and Preston on the Hill, will be protected with the careful management of development.

POLICY FRAMEWORK:							
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPFF (Particularly para.s 14, 15, 17, 18, 23, 28, 29, 42, 47, 50, 79, 151, 154 and 156)						
Local Evidence	Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010/11 (HBC, 2010), Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (BE Group, 2010), Halton Retail and Leisure Study (GVA, 2009), Runcorn New Town Masterplan and Amendments (Runcorn Development Corporation, 1976, 1971 and 1975)						
Strategic Objectives	ALL						
SCS Priorities	Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton, Environment and Regeneration in Halton						
SA Objectives	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>10 - Housing</td> <td>14 – Economy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11 – Accessibility</td> <td>16 – Town Centres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13 – Education</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	10 - Housing	14 – Economy	11 – Accessibility	16 – Town Centres	13 – Education	
10 - Housing	14 – Economy						
11 – Accessibility	16 – Town Centres						
13 – Education							
SA Outcome	Overall, the SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms. Although the level of development set out						

	within some of the policies could have <u>significant</u> negative impacts on some environmental factors, these are sufficiently mitigated by other policy content.
--	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

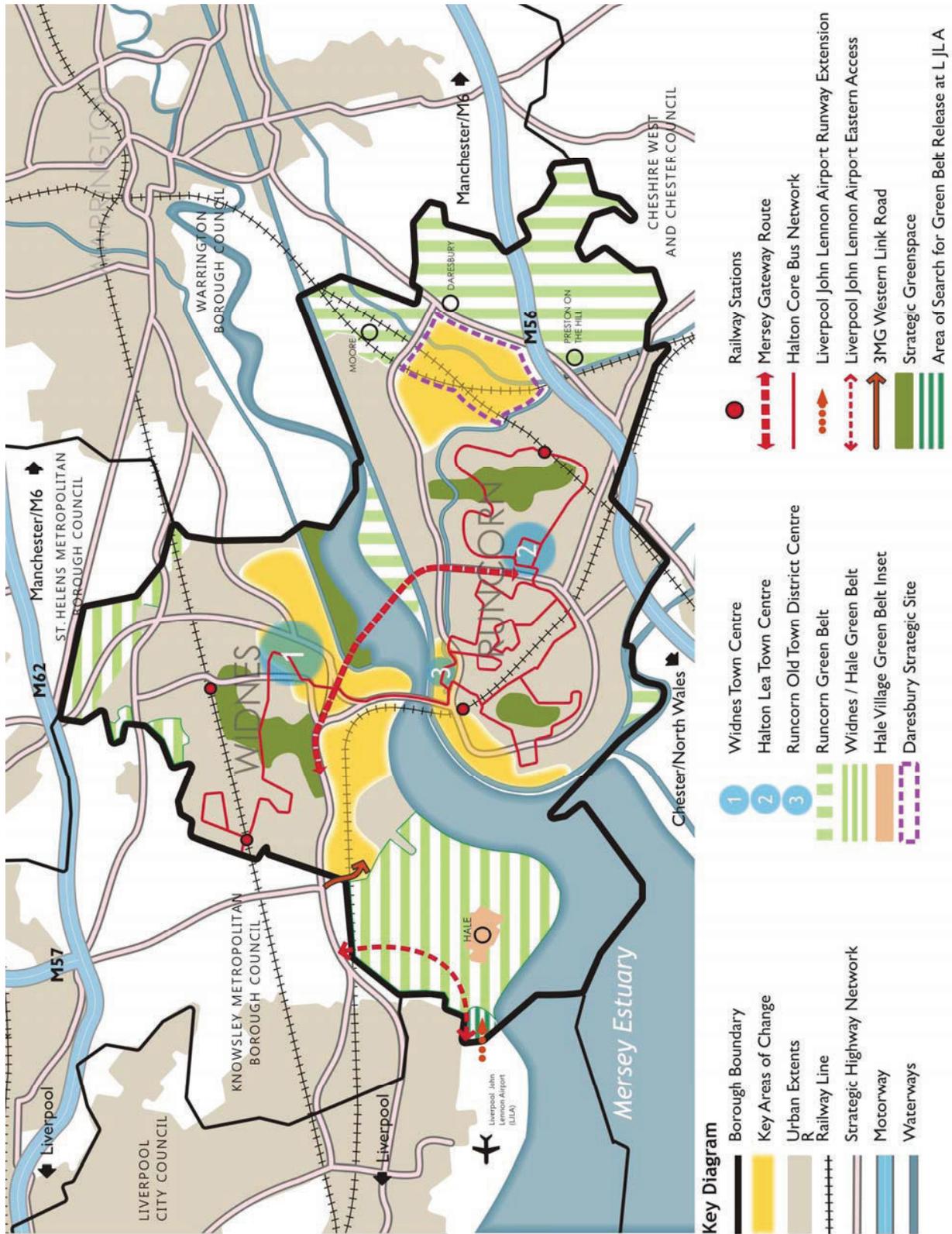


Figure 6: Key Diagram

5 CS2: PRESUMPTION IN FAVOUR OF SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT PRINCIPLES

- 5.1 The overall Spatial Strategy as set out in CS1 establishes the spatial distribution of future growth and development in the Borough. The presumption in favour of sustainable development Principles exists alongside the Spatial Strategy in order to ensure that a positive approach is taken to development proposals, delivering growth and development that is sustainable, and will meeting the needs of Halton's present communities, and planning whilst considering for the needs of future communities over the lifetime of the Core Strategy. All development in the Borough is required to comply with the National Planning Policy Framework contribute towards these principles in order to ensure a sustainable Halton, now and in the future.

Policy CS2: Presumption in Favour of Sustainable Development Principles

When considering development proposals, the Council will take a positive approach that reflects the presumption in favour of sustainable development contained in the National Planning Policy Framework. It will always work proactively with applicants jointly to find solutions which mean that proposals can be approved wherever possible, and to secure development that improves the economic, social and environmental conditions in the area. Planning applications that accord with the policies in this Local Plan¹ (and, where relevant, with policies in Halton's other Local Plans and neighbourhood plans) will be approved without delay, unless material considerations indicate otherwise.

Where there are no policies relevant to the application or relevant policies are out of date at the time of making the decision then the Council will grant permission unless material considerations indicate otherwise – taking into account whether:

- Any adverse impacts of granting permission would significantly and demonstrably outweigh the benefits, when assessed against the policies in the National Planning Policy Framework taken as a whole; or
- Specific policies in that Framework indicate that development should be restricted.

~~Over the lifetime of the Halton Core Strategy, development in the Borough should:~~

- ~~• contribute towards the delivery of mixed and balanced communities;~~
- ~~• increase the quality of life for the Borough's communities, contributing to long term improvements in health and well-being, educational attainment and skill development;~~
- ~~• contribute towards a strong, stable and more competitive economy, responsive to Halton's needs and building upon Halton's strengths;~~
- ~~• be located to minimise the need to travel, increase accessibility and support sustainable transport options;~~
- ~~• regenerate and remediate Halton, bringing noticeable improvements to the Borough's urban areas and green spaces;~~
- ~~• conserve and enhance the character and quality of Halton's natural and historic environment and green infrastructure network;~~
- ~~• minimise factors which contribute to climate change and plan for the potential effects of a changing climate on the Borough's communities and environments;~~

¹ The Halton Core Strategy is a Local Plan under the National Planning Policy Framework and Local Planning Regulations 2012. For the purposes of the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004, Local Plans are prescribed as Development Plan Documents.

- ~~• minimise energy and water use and make efficient use of natural resources including through sustainable waste management and maximising the re-use of recycled products; and,~~
- ~~• ensure that the infrastructure needs of the Borough are met.~~

Justification

5.2 ‘Sustainable development’ is defined as “development which meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs”². ~~The National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) National guidance in the form of PPS 1: Delivering Sustainable Development³ states that~~ emphasises the three dimensions to sustainable development, these being should be delivered through achieving:

- ~~• social progress which recognises the needs of everyone~~ An economic role – contributing to building a strong, responsive and competitive economy;
- ~~• protection and enhancement of the environment~~ A social role – supporting strong, vibrant and healthy communities; and,
- ~~• prudent use of natural resources; and~~ An environmental role – contributing to protecting and enhancing our natural, built and historic environment.;
- ~~• sustainable economic development.~~

5.3 The NPPF introduced the presumption in favour of sustainable development which emphasises the Government’s positive attitude to development that is sustainable, impressing on Local Planning Authorities the importance of expediting planning applications which are in conformity. The whole of the NPPF sets out the Government’s view of what sustainable development means in practical terms for the planning process. The Core Strategy (as part of Halton’s development plan) is the first reference point for those involved in the determination of planning applications. The NPPF makes it clear that local planning documents should reflect the presumption and hence the above policy fulfils this requirement. In accordance with other policies in the NPPF, it should be noted that the presumption does not apply to development where Appropriate Assessment under the Birds or Habitats Directive is required or for development proposals on land designated as a Site of Special Scientific Interest, Green Belt, Local Green Space, designated heritage assets or locations at risk of flooding or coastal erosion. ~~To achieve sustainable development across Halton a number of principles have been agreed. These sustainable development principles are informed by the Borough’s drivers of change and respond to Halton’s challenges as set out in Halton’s Story of Place. As a result the Sustainable Development Principles reflect the current social, economic and environmental needs of the Borough whilst building upon the aims of sustainable development at the national level.~~

5.4 The aims of the NPPF will be delivered through development in Halton:

- contributing towards the delivery of mixed and balanced communities;
- increasing the quality of life for the Borough’s communities, contributing to long term improvements in health and well-being, educational attainment and skill development;

² HM Government (2005) Securing the Future – UK Government Sustainable Development Strategy

³ ~~CLG (2005) Planning Policy Statement 1: Delivering Sustainable Development~~

- contributing towards a strong, stable and more competitive economy, responding to Halton's needs and building upon Halton's strengths;
- being located to minimise the need to travel, increasing accessibility and supporting sustainable transport options;
- regenerating and remediating Halton, bringing noticeable improvements to the Borough's urban areas and green spaces;
- conserving and enhancing the character and quality of Halton's natural and historic environment and green infrastructure network;
- minimising factors which contribute to climate change and plan for the potential effects of a changing climate on the Borough's communities and environments;
- minimising energy and water use and making efficient use of natural resources including through sustainable waste management and maximising the re-use of recycled products; and,
- ensuring that the infrastructure needs of the Borough are met.

5.35.5 In order to achieve sustainable development in Halton over the plan period, all development proposals, ~~where appropriate,~~ will be assessed against the above policy and against the ~~these~~ principles in the NPPF. ~~The other policies in the Core Strategy set out how the NPPF will be applied locally. The Sustainable Development Principles are therefore integral to the delivery of the Core Strategy and are amplified throughout the plan.~~

POLICY FRAMEWORK:																			
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); NPPF (Principally paras 6-16). Securing the Future (HM Gov, 2005)																		
Local Evidence	Halton - State of the Borough (HBC, 2010 2011)																		
Strategic Objectives	ALL																		
SCS Priorities	A Healthy Halton; Employment, Learning and Skills in Halton; Environment and Regeneration in Halton																		
SA Objectives	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>1 – Cultural Heritage</td> <td>10 – Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 – Biodiversity</td> <td>11 – Accessibility</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 – Water Quality</td> <td>12 – Health</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 – Climate Change</td> <td>13 – Education</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 – Flood Risk</td> <td>14 – Economy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 – Energy Efficiency</td> <td>15 – Leisure and Tourism</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 – Land Quality</td> <td>16 – Town Centres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8 – Air Quality</td> <td>17 – Transport</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9 – Waste</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing	2 – Biodiversity	11 – Accessibility	3 – Water Quality	12 – Health	4 – Climate Change	13 – Education	5 – Flood Risk	14 – Economy	6 – Energy Efficiency	15 – Leisure and Tourism	7 – Land Quality	16 – Town Centres	8 – Air Quality	17 – Transport	9 – Waste	
1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing																		
2 – Biodiversity	11 – Accessibility																		
3 – Water Quality	12 – Health																		
4 – Climate Change	13 – Education																		
5 – Flood Risk	14 – Economy																		
6 – Energy Efficiency	15 – Leisure and Tourism																		
7 – Land Quality	16 – Town Centres																		
8 – Air Quality	17 – Transport																		
9 – Waste																			
SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms as it has positive benefits for all of the SA objectives.																		

6 CS3: HOUSING SUPPLY AND LOCATIONAL PRIORITIES

- 6.1 New homes must be provided to ensure an adequate supply of suitable housing for the Borough's existing communities and to accommodate projected growth in the Borough's population. Whilst the resident population has stabilised over recent years ~~and it~~ is projected to experience modest growth ~~rates~~ to 2028, ~~however~~ changing ~~demographics~~ ~~age structures~~, ~~and~~ ~~housing~~ needs ~~of residents~~ ~~and~~ ~~decreasing size of the average household~~ has meant even faster growth in the number of households, placing pressure on Halton's current housing stock.
- 6.2 As indicated in both Halton's Story of Place and the Spatial Strategy, over the Borough's history development has taken place in distinct waves of urban ~~expansion with large scale~~ regeneration ~~schemes~~ often involving the replacement of unsuitable New Town estates, ~~coupled with growth of the Borough onto~~ ~~expansion land at the edges of the urban area~~. Whilst this pattern of development will continue to a certain extent, housing renewal projects ~~are likely to~~ ~~will~~ play less of a role in the future and the Borough will be more dependent on delivering housing on ~~Halton's~~ remaining greenfield sites at the periphery of the urban area. ~~In Runcorn this will be achieved by the delivery of an extension to the east of Runcorn on greenfield land within the existing settlement boundary. In Widnes and Hale the existing Green Belt boundaries are tight to the existing built-up area and any further outward expansion will necessitate a review of the Green Belt to identify additional developable and deliverable land, whilst not undermining the continued priority to regenerate the Borough's urban areas.~~

Policy CS3: Housing Supply and Locational Priorities

Housing Requirement

- ~~A minimum of 9,000~~ 9,930 ~~net additional new~~ ~~homes (net of demolitions)~~ should be provided between 2010 and 2028 at ~~a minimum~~ ~~an average~~ rate of 552 dwellings per annum, with the following overall distribution:
 - Runcorn = about 6,060 dwellings
 - Widnes = about 3,870 dwellings
 - ~~400 units per annum for the period Apr 2010-Mar 2015~~
 - ~~600 units per annum for the period Apr 2015-Mar 2020~~
 - ~~500 units per annum for the period Apr 2020-Mar 2028~~
- Beyond 2028, development should continue at a minimum rate of 500 units per annum (net gain) unless this is superseded by a change to policy.

Potential Housing Supply

- New homes will be delivered from a variety of sources, including:
 - Sites which are currently available for housing development:
 - Housing sites which have been completed since 1st April 2010
 - Sites under construction for housing development
 - Sites with planning permission for housing
 - Sites allocated in an adopted Plan¹

Comment [AC1]:

DISTRIBUTION BASED ON 43:57% SPLIT OF DEVELOPMENT FROM 2010 WITH 930 BACKLOG ATTRIBUTED TO RUNCORN. FIGURES TO BE CONFIRMED WITH INSPECTOR PRIOR TO COMMITTEE / PUBLICATION.

¹ Including undeveloped sites allocated for housing in policy H1 of the Halton Unitary Development Plan. The phasing element of this policy no longer applies.

- Sites which have the potential to contribute to housing land supply:
 - Identified housing opportunities within the Key Areas of Change
 - New housing or mixed-use allocations in subsequent DPDs
 - Appropriate windfall development
 - ~~○ Areas of Search within the Green Belt (subject to identification in a Strategic Green Belt Review)~~
- A partial Green Belt Review will be necessary during the early part of the plan period to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of deliverable development land to meet the housing requirements of the Borough's separate communities as set out in CSI and CS6

In order to deliver sites that are identified as having the potential to contribute to housing supply, ~~are available and will realistically deliver housing development~~, specific sites will be identified in the Site Allocations ~~and Development Management~~ DPD or other applicable DPDs.

Maintaining a 5 year supply

- ~~In accordance with the relevant annual target(s) for housing delivery, €~~The Council will seek to maintain a 5 year supply of deliverable housing land across the Borough in accordance with Government guidance.
- ~~• In addition, the Council will seek to maintain a 5 year supply of deliverable housing sites to meet the identified needs of Runcorn and Widnes / Hale.~~
- ~~• If the Council is unable to identify an ongoing 5 year supply of sites for residential development, there will be a presumption in favour of the development of suitable 'windfall' sites and if necessary, the Council may undertake a Strategic Green Belt Review to inform a Site Allocations DPD in line with the provisions in Policy CS6.~~

Brownfield land

- An average of at least 40% of new residential development should be delivered on previously developed (brownfield) land over the plan period.

Density

- To ensure the efficient use of land, a minimum density on individual sites of 30 dwellings per hectare (dph) will be sought. In more accessible locations such as those close to town / local centres or transport interchanges the presumption will be for developments achieving densities of 40 dph or greater.

Justification

- Setting a housing target****Housing Requirement**
- 6.3 The Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) for the North West set a housing policy target for Halton of 500 units (net dwelling gain) per annum ~~for over~~ the period 2003 to 2021 ~~— and for any period thereafter until such time as the policy is reviewed~~ As highlighted in policy CSI, the Government has indicated its intention to abolish Regional Strategies, however, until such time as RSS for the North West is legally revoked, it remains part of the Development Plan and the Halton Core Strategy must be in general conformity with its provisions. In the initial RSS period to 2010, Halton had delivered a total of 2,570 units (net gain) representing a shortfall of 930 dwellings against the RSS requirement of 3,500 (500 x 7 years). -In order to comply with the RSS, Halton will need to deliver 9,000 dwellings (500 x 18 years) plus the pre-existing backlog, equating to an annual average of 552 (9,930 / 18 years) dwellings (net gain).

6.4

~~Whilst this RSS remains part of the Development Plan for Halton at May 2011, the Coalition Government has indicated its intention to revoke all regional strategies with After the abolition of RSS, the role of determining an appropriate number of homes to be built within each district will fall to the local authority through the Core Strategy or Local Plan. This policy, together with CS1 may therefore be subject to an early review dependent on the date and circumstances at the time the powers to revoke are enacted. Local housing targets are necessary to help deliver the required level of house building to meet local needs whilst giving certainty for both residents and the development industry in terms of how much residential development a local area should accommodate in future years.~~

~~6.3 The housing target of 9,000 new homes at an average rate of 500 homes per year in Halton over the Core Strategy plan period to 2028 has been determined by considering data and research from a variety of sources, including predicted population, household and economic growth. The process for reaching this target is set out in the supporting document "Housing Topic Paper".²~~

~~6.46.5 The RSS housing policy is at targets which have been set represent a level which will meet forecasted locally arising household growth over the plan period, whilst also allowing for a degree of further growth across the Borough. Halton's population is anticipated to rise to 123,900 persons by 2028, a rise of approximately 5,200 persons over the plan period, whilst 2006 based household projections predicted growth of 8,920 households between 2006-2030, an average of 372 households per annum.³~~

~~6.56.6 The proposed housing figure is marginally above the projected growth in households, however this level has been set to promote modest growth in Halton and to enable a range of housing types to be provided. This will allow a continuation of recent trends which will see diversification in the housing offer, which it is hoped will assist in reducing or stemming net out migration that has been prevalent over recent years. Whilst sufficient land to accommodate the bulk of this growth exists in Runcorn, the Examination into this Plan concluded that an early review of the Green Belt around Widnes and Hale is required to meet the needs of these populations.~~

~~6.6 Housing delivery and demand is strongly correlated with the state of the economy; Economic forecasts vary in their predictions for when the economy will recover from the effects of the 'credit crunch' and resultant economic downturn, and for when capacity within the house building industry will return to pre-recession levels. In setting the housing targets, the effects of the economic downturn have been acknowledged with a lower target set for the initial 5 years (in line with the approach for employment land as set out in CS4), before increasing in the following period to deliver the overall quantum required to 2028.~~

Potential housing supply

² HBC (2011) Halton Housing Topic Paper

³ 4NW (2010) Technical Background Paper - Initial Technical work on Housing Provision and Job Growth Figures for the North West

(www.4nw.org.uk/downloads/documents/jul_10/4nw_1279264181_RS2010_Part_2_Housing_provisio.pdf)

- 6.7 Table I in the preceding section summarises the predicted potential housing supply at 2010 across the Borough. The 2010 Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment (SHLAA) indicated ~~s that~~ there is identified ~~land in the Borough with the capacity to deliver 11,268~~ 10,855 dwellings (gross). Whilst this is in excess of the (net) policy requirement to 2028, it allows little flexibility to accommodate changes in demolition rates or identified sites not coming forward as forecast. Whilst the SHLAA process seeks to provide a robust 'snap-shot' estimate of potential housing supply, it ~~This appears sufficient to meet the Borough's housing requirement to 2028 and potentially for a number of years beyond, however the distribution is heavily skewed to south of the river and it~~ must be ~~accepted~~ noted that not all of the identified sites in the SHLAA will be delivered for housing or come forward in the timeframes indicated. Indeed, it may ~~not~~ be desirable for certain sites to be developed for ~~housing uses other than~~ rather than other uses housing. The identified supply is heavily skewed towards Runcorn, particularly due to the Key Area of Change at East Runcorn which includes Sandymoor and Daresbury.
- 6.8 In addition to identified sites, windfall sites (not previously identified in the SHLAA as having the potential to deliver housing) and therefore not factored into the potential housing supply figure) continue to come forward and generate units. Whilst no specific allowance is made for windfall supply in Table I, it is likely that sites will come forward which have not been included within the SHLAA, because of unforeseen circumstances such as the redevelopment of commercial buildings or the release of Council owned land. Urban windfall sites also have the potential to boost the delivery of residential development on brownfield land, supplementing those brownfield sites identified within the SHLAA.
- Maintaining a five year supply**
- 6.8.9 NPPF requires local authorities ensure that a rolling five year supply (+5%) of deliverable housing sites can be demonstrated. This is increased to 5 years +20% where there is a consistent under-delivery⁴. Halton's five year supply of housing land is detailed within the Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment which is updated regularly and performance is also reported through Annual Monitoring Reports.
- Brownfield land**
- 6.9.10 To support urban renewal within Halton, maximise the sustainable use of existing infrastructure and minimise the need to release Green Belt land priority will be given to ~~Developers are encouraged to prioritise~~ the development of previously developed land in accordance with the target and principles set out in Policy CSI. Halton has long worked in partnership with others, including the Homes and Communities Agency (and its predecessors) to pioneer new and innovative ways of tackling the Borough's particular brownfield legacy.^{5,6}
- 6.10.11 ~~Previously PPS3: Housing sets a national minimum standard for development on brownfield land of 60%, whilst~~ Regional Spatial Strategy for the North West (RSS) set a shared target of ~~80~~ 65% for Halton and St.Helens. The Coalition Government ~~amended PPG3 in 2010 to delete this requirement and~~ has stated its intentions to revoke RSS and to remove the national target for the amount of housing

⁴ National Planning Policy Framework (para. 47)

⁵ HCA (2010) Halton Local Brownfield Strategy

⁶ Arup (2010) Greenfield: Brownfield Exchange Concept

⁷ ~~CLG (2011) Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing, paragraph 41~~

development that should take place on previously developed land⁸. Figure 7 below illustrates past rates of delivery of new homes on previously developed land in Halton. Delivery over the previous 15 years has varied significantly, with a high of almost 90% of new dwellings built on brownfield land in 2008/09, compared to a low of only 8% delivered in ~~1997/98~~ 1998/99, averaging 49% over the 15 years. Delivery of housing on brownfield land delivery has varied over this period reflecting the focus of delivery year to year, with greenfield sites in locations such as Upton Rocks, Widnes being balanced with urban regeneration schemes such as Castlefields, Runcorn.

~~6.11~~ 6.12 As discussed in the Spatial Strategy, due to the phased approach in which the Runcorn New Town has been constructed, development on greenfield sites has formed a key part of Halton’s housing delivery over many years. The approach taken in previous local plans has been to phase the release of greenfield sites, to prioritise development within the built up areas in the first instance. These long term patterns of development are reflected in the split between greenfield and brownfield delivery in Figure 7 below, and in the identified stock of ongoing supply as set out in Table I and Appendix I.

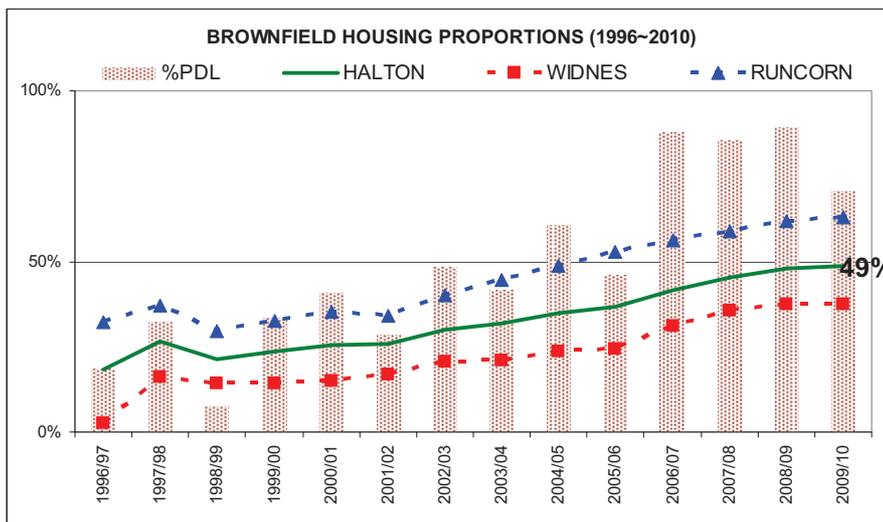


Figure 7: Historical Previously Developed Land (Brownfield) Performance

6.13 The target of 40% of housing development to be delivered on previously developed (brownfield) land is below both the previous national minimum target and the proportion achieved in Halton over the longer term. It is evident that Halton has achieved higher rates of brownfield delivery over the 5 or 6 years to 2010. Of the housing expected to come forward during the plan period or being promoted through the Core Strategy, a high proportion is a fe on greenfield sites. Evidence base documents^{9,10} and Appendix I contain an assessment of the

⁸ CLG (2011) Letter to Chief Planning Officers: Planning for Growth 31 March 2011 (available at: www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1878047.pdf)

⁹ HBC (2011) Housing Topic Paper

proportion of ongoing supply forecast to arise on previously developed land. This shows that of the identified supply (before any allowance for additional greenfield supply through Green Belt release), ~~only 38~~ 39% is on previously developed land. As such setting a higher target for brownfield development would not be realistic or achievable. Net dwelling change and the performance in delivering on previous developed land will continue to be monitored annually and will influence the allocation of sites in later DPDs.

POLICY FRAMEWORK:							
National Policy	PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 79, 159)</u>						
Local Evidence	Halton Housing Strategy 2008-2011 (HBC, 2008); Halton Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010/11 (HBC, 2010); Halton Housing Baseline Report (HBC, Annually) Halton Strategic Housing Market Assessment (GL Hearn / JGC, 2011)						
Strategic Objectives	1 and 2						
SCS Priorities	Environment and Regeneration in Halton						
SA Objectives	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>4 – Climate Change</td> <td>10 - Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 – Flood Risk</td> <td>12 – Health</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 – Land Quality</td> <td>17 – Transport</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	4 – Climate Change	10 - Housing	5 – Flood Risk	12 – Health	7 – Land Quality	17 – Transport
4 – Climate Change	10 - Housing						
5 – Flood Risk	12 – Health						
7 – Land Quality	17 – Transport						
SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms. Although development is likely to have <u>significant</u> negative impacts on some environmental factors these can be managed / mitigated.						

¹⁰ HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010 ~~GL Hearn and Justin Gardner Consulting (2011) Halton Strategic Housing Market Assessment~~

9 CS6: GREEN BELT

- 9.1 Green Belt land covers approximately one-third of the Borough, and provides important gaps between surrounding urban areas including St Helens to the north, Liverpool to the west and Warrington to the east, and maintains distinct towns and villages with their own identities. In addition to the strategic function that areas of Green Belt play, it also has a role in Halton's Green Infrastructure network providing informal recreational opportunities for the Borough's residents and representing a significant biodiversity resource. Land within the Green Belt will come under pressure to be released for development over the plan period and it is for the Core Strategy to ensure this happens in a co-ordinated and sustainable manner.

Policy CS6: Green Belt

~~The general extent of the Green Belt surrounding Halton, broadly following the line of the built up area as indicated on the Key Diagram, and as defined on the Proposals Map, will remain largely unchanged over the initial plan period. This is with the exception of the area to the east of Liverpool John Lennon Airport where an area of search is identified within which minor alterations will be considered as part of an Allocations DPD in accordance with CS17.~~

A partial Green Belt review ~~may~~ will be necessary during the early part of the plan period to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of deliverable development land to meet the requirements of the Borough's separate communities as set out in CS1, CS3 and CS4. ~~Any~~ This review is likely to ~~will~~ be limited to meeting the identified needs of Widnes / Hale ~~and would be undertaken in support of a subsequent Site Allocations DPD. The development of any land released from the Green Belt will be phased towards the latter part of the plan period with the release of land in~~ line ~~accordance~~ with the prioritisation of urban renewal/regeneration as set out in CS1. In addition, an Area of Search is identified to the east of Liverpool John Lennon Airport within which minor alterations will be considered in accordance with policy CS17. Green Belt boundary changes will be defined in the subsequent Site Allocations Local Plan.

The general extent of the Green Belt surrounding Runcorn, broadly following the line of the built up area as indicated on the Key Diagram, and as defined on the Halton UDP Proposals Map¹, will remain unchanged over the plan period.

Small scale development amounting to minor infilling within the 'washed over'² Green Belt settlements of Daresbury, Moore and Preston on the Hill may be permitted where it can be shown to be necessary to meet ~~identified~~ specific local needs.

Justification

Green Belt History and Purpose

- 9.2 The main purpose of Halton's Green Belt designation is to keep land open and generally free from development, maintaining strategic gaps between Runcorn and Widnes and surrounding settlements. In accordance with CS2: Sustainable Development Principles, it protects against unwanted urban sprawl, and directs

¹ For the purposes of the Town and Country Planning (Local Planning)(England) Regulations 2012, at the date of adoption of this Core Strategy the 'Halton UDP Proposals Map' was the 'Adopted Policies Map'

² CLG (2001) Planning Policy Guidance 2: Green Belts

development to built up areas where it can assist in urban regeneration and be of benefit to existing communities.

~~9.3 Given that Widnes previously fell within the county of Lancashire, (with later changes designating surrounding authorities as the county of Merseyside) and Runcorn within Cheshire, Green Belt boundaries were first established through separate processes in different County Structure Plans. The current area of Green Belt around Widnes was set out in the Merseyside Structure Plan from 1979 and then the Merseyside Green Belt Local Plan (1983). In Cheshire, broad areas of Green Belt land were first designated as part of the 1979 Structure Plan. The extent of the Green Belt land was then embedded in the Halton Local Plan in 1996 and reconfirmed in the Unitary Development Plan of 2005.~~

~~9.49.3~~ Regional Spatial Strategy for the North West (Policy RDF4) specified that there was no need for any exceptional substantial strategic change to Green Belt within Cheshire, Greater Manchester, Lancashire or Merseyside before 2011, but that Local Development Frameworks may provide for detailed changes in Green Belt boundaries to accommodate the expansion of Manchester and Liverpool John Lennon Airports.

~~9.4~~ National ~~Policy~~ planning policy for Green Belts ~~is set out in Planning Policy Guidance 2 (PPG2) which details their~~ importance ~~of Green Belts~~ and how they can contribute to achieving sustainable development. It identifies five purposes for including land in the Green Belt;

- 1) to check unrestricted sprawl of built-up areas,
- 2) to prevent neighbouring towns from merging into one another,
- 3) to assist in safeguarding countryside from encroachment,
- 4) to preserve the setting and special character of historic towns, and
- 5) to assist in urban regeneration, by encouraging the recycling of derelict land
other urban land ~~main~~

It further states that once the general extent of the Green Belt has been approved, it should only be altered in exceptional circumstances. The proposed Green Belt Review will have full regard to these principles.

9.5 The Halton Landscape Character Assessment³ included within its assessment of the Borough's landscape, Green Belt land surrounding the urban area. The assessment categorised the three main areas of Green Belt in the Borough as having distinctive landscape characteristics and made recommendations in terms of how these areas should be managed, which will be taken forward in accordance with the approach set out in CS20: Natural and Historic Environment (unless doing so conflicts with other key objectives of the Core Strategy). The landscape characteristics of the three main areas of Green Belt are:

- Hale Shore and Farmland
- North Widnes Farmland
- Daresbury Sandstone Escarpment / Preston on the Hill Undulating Enclosed Farmland

~~9.6~~ ~~Development within Inset and Washed Over Villages~~
National policy allows for limited development within villages which are 'washed over' by a Green Belt designation. ~~In certain instances, small scale development may be necessary to maintain or enhance the sustainability of rural communities;~~

³ TEP (2009) Halton Landscape Character Assessment

~~such as for the provision of village services or for affordable housing. Any proposals for such development within Halton's Green Belt villages would need to demonstrate specific local need, such as a requirement for affordable housing.~~

~~9.7 Hale Village is inset within the Green Belt, meaning that unlike the other villages in the Borough, Green Belt policy does not apply within the settlement boundary. Infill development within the village will be viewed as appropriate where it would enhance the character of the village.~~

Potential Need for Green Belt Review

~~9.8 In 2010, a study was undertaken across the Liverpool City Region (LCR) in respect of cross-boundary employment and housing land development issues.⁴ The aim of the study was to determine if there were land supply issues in individual authorities, and whether unmet development needs of one area could reasonably be met within the urban extents of other authorities within the sub-region, avoiding the need for a strategic review of the Green Belt. Emerging findings indicate that in relation to housing land supply there is no need for a strategic review of Green Belt across the three districts comprising the LCR Eastern Housing Market Area (Halton, St Helens and Warrington), though a number of neighbouring authorities in the Northern Housing Market Area are embarking on reviews. In relation to employment land supply, whilst the study found there to be a potential shortfall in Halton's supply in the medium to long term (to 2031), this did not take into account the remodelling and regeneration opportunities highlighted though the JELP Study⁵ and referred to in CS4. If these sites are taken into account, the study recognised there is a much more balanced position in the longer term.~~

~~9.9 The study considered land supply within local authorities as a whole and did not look at the adequacy of supply to meet future needs in separate communities within an individual authority's area.~~

~~9.10 The land supply position as detailed in CS1: Halton's Spatial Strategy and in the evidence base accompanying the Core Strategy⁶ indicate that overall Halton has an adequate supply of land to meet anticipated development needs over the plan period for both housing and employment purposes, however, this assessment of the whole Borough masks a mismatch in supply north and south of the river.~~

9.6 The housing policy figure for Halton as set out in CS1 and CS3 conforms with Policy L4 of the Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) for the North West which required that Halton plan to provide a minimum of 500 units (net dwelling gain) over the period from 2003 to 2021 and for any period after until such time as the policy is reviewed. As highlighted in policy CS1, the Government has indicated its intention to abolish Regional Strategies, however, until such time as RSS for the North West is legally revoked, it remains part of the Development Plan and the Halton Core Strategy must be in general conformity with its provisions.

9.7 Analysis of the identified supply of deliverable and developable land for residential development (at 2010)⁷ suggests that the total, whilst sufficient to meet the RSS housing requirement 'rolled forward' seven years to cover the Core Strategy plan

⁴ GVA (2011) Housing and Economic Development Evidence Base Overview Study for Liverpool City Region Partners

⁵ BE Group (2010) Joint Employment Land and Premises Study

⁶ HBC (2011) Housing Topic Paper

⁷ HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010

period to 2028, has little margin or flexibility to cope with increased demolitions or projected supply not coming forward as anticipated.

~~9.11~~9.8 Runcorn has sufficient identified land to meet its anticipated housing needs with the supply of land for employment purposes sufficient in the short term with regeneration / redevelopment opportunities within existing protected employment areas expected to bolster long term supply and as such the previous Green Belt boundaries are reconfirmed.

~~9.12~~ — ~~Widnes / Hale have sufficient identified land (at 2010) to meet their anticipated housing development needs⁸ in the period up to 2022⁹ with a potential shortfall of supply of around 600 units to 2028, (see Appendix I; Monitor Line Chart) with land for employment purposes sufficient in terms of overall supply for the plan period but limited in terms of range and quality. These limitations in the range of employment sites available within Widnes together with potential contamination issues limit the scope to reallocate employment land for residential purposes. Therefore at 2010, Widnes / Hale had a potential shortage of identified land for residential development in the region of around 20 Ha. (i.e. 600 units delivered at a density of 30 dph).~~

~~9.13~~ — ~~The Core Strategy seeks to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of development land to meet the needs of Halton's individual communities. Policies CS3 and CS4 define 'sufficient' supply as equating to 5 years at the prevailing policy target(s). Analysis of the position in 2010 showed that Widnes / Hale are forecast to be able to demonstrate a 5 year supply for residential development in each year until 2018 based on current build rates. Runcorn is forecast to have in excess of a 5 year supply for residential development throughout the plan period.~~

~~9.14~~ — ~~Changes to build rate assumptions (reviewed annually) and new, previously unidentified or unavailable 'windfall' sites have the potential to boost supply, possibly addressing the minor shortfall at 2010, negating the need for specific policy intervention including Green Belt review. An assessment of windfall rates is contained within the 'Housing Topic Paper' paper.¹⁰~~

~~9.15~~ — ~~The land supply and demand situation across Halton's communities will be kept under regular review with annual monitoring to ensure a continuing 5 year supply of developable land in line with Policies CS3 and CS4. If the situation arises where it is apparent that an ongoing 5 year supply of development land from within the existing urban extents cannot be identified for the subsequent three years and alternative solutions are not forthcoming, a Green Belt review will be triggered to inform the content of a subsequent Site Allocations DPD to ensure the future prosperity of the Borough and the wider sub region. Land supply information at 2010 suggest this may be necessary around 2015.~~

9.9 Housing supply is constrained in Widnes / Hale, with the likelihood that the identified supply (at 2010) will not be sufficient to meet the defined policy requirement throughout the full plan period. The Examination into this Plan concluded that this constituted the exceptional circumstances, as required to be demonstrated by the National Planning Policy Framework, to warrant an early partial review of the Halton Green Belt around these settlements.

⁸ - GL Hearn / JG Consulting (2011) Mid-Mersey Strategic Housing Market Assessment

⁹ - HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010

¹⁰ - HBC (2011) Housing Topic Paper

Potential Scale of Green Belt Review

~~9.169.10 PPG2 National planning policy~~ states that Green Belt boundaries should have a degree of permanence and should endure beyond the timeframe of normal development plans. As such, ~~any the planned~~ review of Green Belt boundaries ~~as may be necessary~~ around Widnes / Hale during the ~~life of this~~ early part of this Core Strategy plan period will ~~would~~ need to look beyond 2028, addressing not only any known shortfall in development land to 2028 but also taking into account foreseeable development requirements beyond this period and ensuring that the boundaries will last and not come under undue pressure. ~~As such, it is not possible at this time to identify the total quantum of land potentially affected by any review as this will be influenced by the degree of any shortfall and the timing of the review.~~

~~9.179.11 Any~~ It is intended that the review will be conducted in ~~consultation partnership~~ with neighbouring authorities, particularly St Helens, Warrington, Liverpool and Knowsley to ensure that as far as can be achieved, a coordinated and strategic approach is taken. ~~Any resultant changes to the Green Belt boundary will be enacted in a subsequent Site Allocations DPD.~~

Development within Inset and Washed Over Villages

9.12 National policy allows for limited development within villages which are 'washed over' by a Green Belt designation. In certain instances, small scale development may be necessary to maintain or enhance the sustainability of rural communities, such as for the provision of village services or for affordable housing. Any proposals for such development within Halton's Green Belt villages would need to demonstrate specific local need, such as a requirement for affordable housing.

9.13 Hale Village is inset within the Green Belt, meaning that unlike the other villages in the Borough, Green Belt policy does not apply within the settlement boundary. Infill development within the village will be viewed as appropriate where it would enhance the character of the village.

POLICY FRAMEWORK:							
National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, Updated 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 17, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 92, 111, 112, 151)						
Local Evidence	Halton Landscape Character Assessment (HBC, 2009); Mid Mersey Strategic Housing Market Assessment (GL Hearn and Justin Gardner Consulting, 2011); Halton Housing Needs Study (DCA, 2006); Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment (HBC, 2010); Housing and Economic Development Evidence Base Overview Study for Liverpool City Region Partners (GVA, 2010); Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (BE Group, 2010)						
Strategic Objectives	2 and 10						
SCS Priorities	Environment and Regeneration in Halton						
SA Objectives	<table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="background-color: #92d050;">1 – Cultural Heritage</td> <td style="background-color: #92d050;">10 – Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="background-color: #92d050;">2 – Biodiversity</td> <td style="background-color: #92d050;">14 – Economy</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="background-color: #92d050;">7 – Land Quality</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing	2 – Biodiversity	14 – Economy	7 – Land Quality	
1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing						
2 – Biodiversity	14 – Economy						
7 – Land Quality							
SA Outcome	Overall, this policy highlights the importance of protecting Green Belt land over the plan period. This will have a positive						

impact on the relevant SA objectives.

APPENDIX B

Halton Borough Council

SCHEDULE OF MAIN MODIFICATIONS (TO BE SUBJECT TO PUBLIC CONSULTATION) TOGETHER WITH PRE-SUBMISSION AND POST INITIAL HEARING SESSION MINOR CHANGES

Halton Core Strategy Local Plan
Post Submission Changes Document

June 2012

Operational Director
Policy, Planning and Transportation
Halton Borough Council
Municipal Building
Kingsway
Widnes
WA8 7QF

Executive Board Draft

1.0 Introduction

1.1 This document sets out a schedule of all changes proposed to be made to the Halton Core Strategy Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011). All changes are shown as follows:

- [Blue underline to show text to be inserted](#)
- ~~Red strike through to show text to be deleted~~

1.2 There are three types of changes contained within this schedule:

- **Main Modification** (prefix MM)

These are changes that are necessary to make the plan sound. They largely arose through the Examination Hearing sessions held at the end of 2011. The Council has written to the Inspector (Examination Documents Ref: HBC5¹ and HBC7²) making a request under Section 20(7C) of the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act, for the Inspector to recommend these main modifications be made to the Halton Core Strategy.

Public consultation on these changes is required as they cover soundness issues. Sustainability Appraisal and Habitats Regulations Assessment have been carried out on these proposed changes. These assessments are available to view on the Council's website as part of the public consultation.

- **Minor Post Submission Change** (prefix MC)

These are largely consequential changes to the supporting text of policies which are subject to Main Modifications. In addition to this type of amendment, changes have also arisen from the publication of the National Planning Policy Framework³ in March 2012, and the concurrent cancellation of the majority of Planning Policy Guidance and Statements.

Such changes are felt to be minor in nature, and do not affect the policy direction of the plan or introduce new requirements for development.

- **Submission Change** (prefix SM)

These are changes previously detailed in the Schedule of Minor Changes (Submission Document Ref: CS4⁴) which was submitted to the Secretary of State / Inspector for consideration alongside the Core Strategy. For completeness and ease of reference, these changes have been reproduced within this updated schedule, so that all proposed changes to the Revised Proposed Submission Core Strategy can be read together.

¹ HBC (2012) Main Modifications

http://www3.halton.gov.uk/ignl/pages/86821/86836/89285/151961/170894/cxletter_27Jan.pdf

² HBC (2012) Further Main Modification – Daresbury Station

http://www3.halton.gov.uk/ignl/pages/86821/86836/89285/151961/170894/Letter_to_Insp_re_Daresbury_station_2012-05-04th.pdf

³ CLG (2012) National Planning Policy Framework

<http://www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/2115939.pdf>

⁴ HBC (2011) Schedule of Minor Changes

[http://www3.halton.gov.uk/ignl/pages/86821/86836/89285/167788/CS4_Schedule_of_Minor_Changes_\(September_2011\).pdf](http://www3.halton.gov.uk/ignl/pages/86821/86836/89285/167788/CS4_Schedule_of_Minor_Changes_(September_2011).pdf)

Alongside typographical/grammatical amendments and factual updates, changes arising from representations made during the last consultation period in May – June 2011, where the Council agrees that the change proposed would improve the Halton Core Strategy, have also been included. These are detailed as follows in the “Reason for Change” column:

- **In response to representation received (Peel Holdings – 00859/00002/001).**

Such changes are felt to be minor in nature, and do not affect the policy direction of the plan or introduce new requirements for development.

- 1.3 The body of this report is set out to follow the order of the Halton Core Strategy document, with the changes proposed shown for each section of the document, from the Foreword, through to the Glossary at Appendix 5.

How to make representations on these changes

[TO BE ADDED TO PUBLICATION VERSION]

Executive Board Draft

CHANGES THROUGHOUT THE DOCUMENT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Minor post submission change MCI	All Headers	HALTON CORE STRATEGY <u>LOCAL PLAN</u> REVISED PROPOSED <u>POST SUBMISSION CHANGES</u>	

Executive Board Draft

FOREWORD / CONTENTS

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	1 st Paragraph	Welcome to Halton Borough Council's Core Strategy which will play a crucial role in shaping the spatial development of Halton up to 2028 <u>and beyond</u> .	To clarify position.
Submission Change SM2	Contents / Appendices	Appendix 2 Town <u>and District Centre</u> Boundaries	To clarify the status of the maps and update title of the appendix.
Submission Change SM3	Contents / Figures	Figure 3 Halton Borough Council	
Submission Change SM4	Contents / Figures	Figure 15 SFRA Level +2 Flood Risk Areas	Updated position.
Submission Change SM5	Contents / Table	1 Distribution of Identified Development Potential <u>as at April 2010</u>	To provide further detail.
Submission Change SM6	Contents / Table	2 Projected <u>Anticipated</u> Distribution of Development / Development Land <u>2010</u> to 2028	To provide further detail.
Minor post submission change MCI	Foreword	The Core Strategy sets out in 'Halton's Story of Place' how the Borough has developed over time and introduces the Borough's characteristics, including the issues and challenges that the Borough now faces and those likely to have an impact and drive further change during the period to 2028 <u>and beyond</u> .	Minor amendment

INTRODUCTION

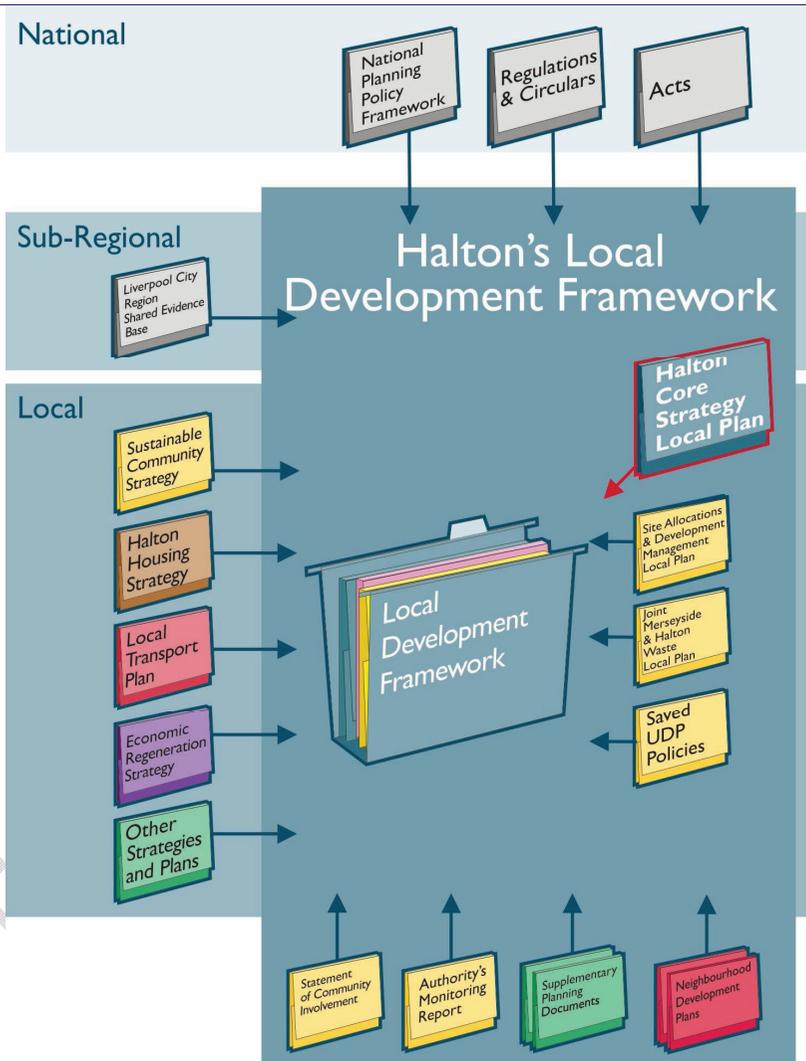
Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	1.1	...and be used to guide development and determine planning applications over the next 15 coming years to 2028.	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM2	1.3	...and ultimately peoples' quality of life.	Typo.
Submission Change SM3	1.4	...community involvement o in the Core Strategy...	Typo.
Submission Change SM4	1.6	...work was progressed on the Preferred Options for the Spatial Development...	Typo.
Submission Change SM5	1.12	...following the plans of the new Coalition Government...	Updating position.
Submission Change SM6	1.12	...National Planning <u>Policy</u> Framework...	Updating position.
Submission Change SM7	Figure 1	<u>Deletion of Developer Contributions DPD from LDF diagram</u>	Updating position.
Submission Change SM8	Insert new para after 1.15	<u>Additionally, the Atlantic Gateway² also informs the regional context. The Atlantic Gateway is a framework for collaboration between the Manchester and Liverpool City Regions which will help to unlock their full sustainable economic growth potential.</u> <u>²NWDA (2010) Atlantic Gateway: Accelerating Growth across the Manchester and Liverpool City Regions – Framework for a Global Growth Opportunity</u>	In response to representation received (Peel Holdings – 00859/00002/001).
Submission Change SM9	1.16	...and the City of Liverpool...	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM10	1.16	These aims are to be <u>have been</u> formalised through the...	Updating position.
Submission Change SM11	1.18	...has a close relationship to Halton's SCS <u>Sustainable Community Strategy (SCS)</u> which outlines...	Inclusion of full acronym.
Submission Change SM12	1.18	⁴ HBC (2010) Halton's s Sustainable Community Strategy 2011-2026	Typo.
Submission Change SM13	1.19	...the Halton Strategic Partnership has prioritising <u>prioritised</u> three areas of focus...	Typo.

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM14	1.20	...the Halton Local Transport Plan (LTP) ⁵ ... ⁵ HBC (2011) Halton Local Transport Plan 3	Document referencing.
Submission Change SM15	1.21 C) Habitats Regulations Assessment (HRA)	Assesses the potential effects of the plan on sites designated for the habitats and species they support as important at European Level.	Clarification.
Minor post submission change MC1	1.1	...and be used to guide development and determine planning applications over the coming years, to 2028 and beyond .	Minor amend
Minor post submission change MC2	1.5	The Issues Paper began by introducing the new plan making system and what the meaning and purpose of 'spatial planning' was.	Update
Minor post submission change MC3	1.6	From the Issues and Options stage, work was progressed on the Preferred Options for the S patial D development of the Borough.	Minor amend
Minor post submission change MC4	1.7	Subsequent to the Preferred Options stage, full consideration was given to the comments received, and further work has been was undertaken with key stakeholders, neighbouring authorities and delivery partners regarding key sites and supporting infrastructure.	Update
Minor post submission change MC5	1.8	The Proposed Submission Document was published for an 8 week period of public consultation between 29 th November 2010 and 24 th January 2011 for representations to be made. Due to a number of representations received, it was considered prudent to address a number of key issues raised. As such, a further consultation period of six weeks has was been programmed to consult on changes in the Revised Proposed Submission Document. This further consultation took place between 13th May and 24th June 2011. After the public consultation had closed and the representations were analysed, the Halton Core Strategy was submitted to the Secretary of State to commence the examination into the soundness of the document on 22nd September 2011. The examination hearing sessions were held in November and December	Update to text re. most recent public consultation.

		2011 . Further consultation on the modifications arising from the hearing sessions took place in summer 2012.	
Minor post submission change MC6	1.9	Subsequent to the public consultation on the Revised Proposed Submission Document the Core Strategy will be submitted to the Secretary of State for independent examination before the Council can formally adopt the plan.	Text no longer relevant.
Minor post submission change MC7	1.10	National planning policies are currently set out in the form of Planning Policy Statements (PPSs) and Guidance (PPGs) the National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) 1 and the accompanying technical guidance 2 . These PPSs and PPGs This establishes high-level planning principles for England and requirements for the LDF planning system , covering a the full range of land use topics from sustainable development, to the historic environment, to flood risk. The only exceptions to this being national planning policy for gypsies, travellers and travelling showpeople which has its own standalone advice 3 , national planning policy for waste 4 and selected Minerals Planning Guidance . The NPPF provides the policy basis for local Councils to produce their own local plans which respond to the specific needs of their communities. National policy statements on topics relating to strategic infrastructure such as Energy, Transport and Water also form part of the overall framework and are a material consideration in determining planning applications . The Core Strategy must conform with, but not repeat national planning policy, unless it is essential in order to provide a coherent set of policies.	Update to text as NPPF was published in March 2012, replacing existing PPS/PPGs.

Minor post submission change
MC8

Figure 1:
Indicative Core
Strategy Policy
Context



Updated diagram to reflect change in National planning policy, deletion of regional tier of planning policy and amendment to terminology for Development Plan documents.

Minor post

I.12

~~Although the overall direction and approach to national planning policy is unlikely to~~

Text no longer relevant as NPPF was

submission change MC9		change, it is anticipated, following the plans of the new Coalition Government, that there will be moves to streamline current national planning policy into a wider, less detailed, National Planning Policy Framework. This will be taken into consideration when preparing future LDF documents and policies.	published in March 2012. <i>N.B. This also supersedes Changes 5 and 6 under the Introduction as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i>
Minor post submission change MC10	1.14	Once RSS is abolished, the Core Strategy will no longer have a statutory obligation to conform to previous regional targets and policy. <u>As such, policy content in the Core Strategy which relies on policies within the RSS may be subject to review after the Regional Strategies are formally revoked.</u>	To align with amendments to text elsewhere in the Core Strategy.
Minor post submission change MC11	1.15	In order to provide a strategic outlook for the region, the 'Future North West: Our Shared Priorities document' ³ has been <u>was produced prior to the decision to abolish the regional tier of planning policy.</u> The <u>Future North West</u> document sets out four overarching themes...	Update
Minor post submission change MC12	1.18	At the local level, Halton's LDF consists of <u>Local Plans Development Plan Documents (DPDs)</u> and Supplementary Planning Documents (SPDs) in addition to a number of process documents, including the Statement of Community Involvement and the <u>Annual Authority's</u> Monitoring Report. The LDF also includes the Saved Policies of the Halton UDP, which will eventually be replaced by policies in <u>Halton's DPDs Local Plans</u> and SPDs.	New terminology for planning policy documents, introduced through Localism Act, NPPF and Local Planning Regulations 2012
Minor post submission change MC13	Supporting Documents Table	C) Habitats Regulations Assessment (HRA) Assesses the potential effects of the plan on sites designated for the habitats and species they support as important at the European Level. The process is split into three distinct phases with the first screening stage completed as part of the Core Strategy Preferred Options and the latter two stages, termed Appropriate Assessment, completed as part of <u>all subsequent stages</u> the Proposed Submission Document . The Appropriate Assessment assesses the likely effects of the plan on the integrity of designated European wildlife sites and the identification of mitigation measures or alternative solutions, where appropriate. The Appropriate Assessment reports <u>have published alongside the Core Strategy Proposed Submission Document</u> has been subject to consultation with the Statutory Consultees including Natural England and the Countryside Council for Wales (CCW). The <u>policy</u> amendments required through this process have been included within the	Update to text

		Revised Proposed Submission version of the Core Strategy.	
Minor post submission change MCI4	Supporting Documents Table	D) Statement of Consultation Summarises consultation undertaken so far <u>throughout the production of the plan</u> and highlights how this has been taken into account in the development of the Core Strategy.	Update
Minor post submission change MCI5	Supporting Documents Table	G) LDF Evidence Base Sets out a comprehensive list of all the pieces of research of <u>and</u> publications which underpin Halton's Core Strategy and the wider Local Development Framework (LDF).	Minor amend

Executive Board Draft

STORY OF PLACE

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	2.2	Home to 118,700 119,300' people... ' ONS (2009/2010) Mid-Year Population Estimates	Updating position.
Submission Change SM2	Figure 3	Halton Borough Council	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM3	2.11	...the eastern by-pass (A557 A568 Watkinson Way)...	Typo.
Submission Change SM4	2.15	...linked by a busway system on a segregated carriageway and the all purpose Expressway which <u>was intended to</u> form a unique 'figure of eight' around the town.	The 'figure of eight' was never actually finished – the A56 is not part of it.
Submission Change SM5	2.25	The population of the Borough, currently 118,700 119,300...	Updating position. Subsequently superseded by additional minor change
Submission Change SM6	2.35	...and is likely to increase in the current recessionary period <u>economic climate</u> .	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM7	2.38	Redevelopment of ICI's <u>former</u> headquarters...	Updating position.
Submission Change SM8	2.41	...including ten e Conservation a Areas, seven s Scheduled m Monuments and...	Typo.
Submission Change SM9	2.48	Liverpool John Lennon Airport is located adjacent to Halton Borough Council's western boundary within Liverpool City Council's <u>authority</u>	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM10	2.49	Travel patterns show that <u>a total of</u> 13.8% of commuting flows to Halton are by residents within the Liverpool City Region Local <u>Authorities</u> , however, the largest <u>individual</u> flow by <u>Local Authority</u> is by residents of Warrington (9.7%).	To give clarification.
Submission Change SM11	2.55 (second bullet)	Tackle issues of deprivation and health for the Borough's residents;	Typo.
Submission Change SM12	2.55 (sixth bullet)	Support the Borough's economic growth sectors including science and technology, and logistics and distribution;	Typo.
Submission Change SM13	2.55 (ninth bullet)	Protect, enhance and, where appropriate, expand the Borough's green infrastructure network for its intrinsic value, recreational opportunities and for the added benefits of improving health and well-being of the Borough's communities;	To bring text in line with other bullets in this section.

Minor post submission change MC1	2.13	After a brief spell as a spa resort, Runcorn's modern growth can be traced to the opening of the Bridgewater canal Canal in 1761	Minor grammatical correction
Minor post submission change MC2	2.15	As a result the New Town comprises a number of distinct neighbourhoods, each with an individual identity emphasised in individual architectural forms linked by a busway system on a segregated carriageway and the all-purpose Expressway which was intended to form a unique 'figure of eight' around the town.	Minor factual correction
Minor post submission change MC3	2.25 and accompanying footnote	Halton's resident population has, after a significant period of population decline, started to experience a reverse in the trend with modest growth projection. The population of the Borough, currently 118,700, estimated to be 119,600 11 in 2010, is projected to increase by around 5,200 9,600, to 123,900 129,200 by the end of the plan period (2028) ¹² . 5 ONS 2010 Based Sub-national Population Projections 56 ONS (2008) 2010 Based Subnational Population Projections	Minor factual update Supersedes previous minor change SM5 above
Minor post submission change MC4	2.26 and accompanying footnote	As such the population structure is ageing with the numbers aged over 65+ projected to increase by some 50 59%, growing by some 9,800 10,200 from 16,900 in 2008 17,300 in 2010 to 27,500 in 2028 ¹¹ . This ageing population will create additional demand for care services and for adapted or specialist housing. 7 ONS 2010 Based Sub-national Population Projections 78 CLG (2010) The English Indices of Deprivation	Minor factual update
Minor post submission change MC5	2.35	In terms of economic activity, Halton displays issues of worklessness and unemployment. The economic activity rate, which shows the percentage of economically active people of working age, for Halton (74.4%) is below both the North West (74.7%) and Great Britain (76.3%) ¹⁴ . The current Job Seekers Allowance claimant rate in Halton in 2011 is 5.5%; this is greater than the North West rate (4.2%) and the national rate (3.7%) ¹⁵ , and is likely to increase in the current recessionary period economic climate .	Minor wording amendment to aid clarity (including Submission Change SM5 above)
Minor post submission change MC6	2.48	Liverpool John Lennon Airport is located adjacent to Halton Borough Council's western boundary within Liverpool City Council's administrative area .	Minor wording amendment

Minor post submission change MC7	2.49	Travel patterns show that a total of 13.8% of commuting flows to Halton are by residents within the Liverpool City Region local authorities , however, the largest individual flow is by local authority area is by residents of Warrington (9.7%) ¹⁹ .	Minor wording amendments (incorporating Submission Minor Change SM9 above)
--------------------------------------------	------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Executive Board Draft

VISION AND STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SMI	3.6	The Borough's economy has been strengthened by the expansion of key employment areas at Daresbury Strategic Site , 3MG, Mersey Gateway Port and Widnes Waterfront...	In response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/00004/002)
Minor post submission change MCI	3.12	Maintain and enhance Halton's town, district and local centres to create high quality retail and leisure areas that meet the needs of the local community, and positively contribute to the image of the Borough	Minor addition to aid clarity
Minor post submission change MC2	Spatial Policies Section Divider	Core Strategy Revised Proposed Post Submission Changes Document	Revised document title

CSI: HALTON'S SPATIAL STRATEGY

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	4.1	The Spatial Strategy flows from the Vision for Halton. It expresses how we will achieve what we want to deliver over the plan period,...	Full stop missing.
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording Point (2)	Important green infrastructure within the urban area will be protected from detrimental development to ensure its value, both individually and as part of a network, is retained.	Comma missing.
Submission Change SM3	Policy wording Point (3)	In addition, the land supply position may warrant a general strategic review of Green Belt boundaries to serve development needs arising in Widnes and Hale prior to 2028.	To be consistent with CS3 and CS6.
Submission Change SM4	Policy wording Point (3)	<i>More detail regarding the Borough's Green Belt is set out in CS6.</i>	To be consistent with other sections within this policy.
Submission Change SM5	Table 1	See extract below for changes proposed to Table 1	To add clarity to terminology used
Submission Change SM6	4.7	This demonstrates that almost three quarters of the potential housing supply identified lies south of the river, with previously identified land accounting for only 38 39 % of the potential total.	Typo.
Submission Change SM7	Table 2	See extract below for changes proposed to Table 2	To add in totals and percentages for predicted employment land split between Runcorn and Widnes.
Submission Change SM8	4.12	...and its importance and continued expansion is supported by the shadow -Liverpool City Region Local Enterprise Partnership who secured Regional Growth Fund monies in 2011 to further enhance its connectivity and capacity.	Updating position.
Submission Change SM9	4.13	Evidence from Halton's Retail and Leisure Study suggests that there is potential to expand the bulky goods retail warehousing ...	To align with policy CS5.
Submission Change SM10	4.20	Within the East Runcorn Key Area of Change, part of the Daresbury area is being allocated as a Strategic Site...	For clarification.
Submission Change SM11	4.20	Alongside the expansion of the employment offer, a new residential community is also being promoted at Daresbury Strategic Site , which will not only...	In response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/00004/002)
Submission Change SM12	4.22	Halton's existing -network of green infrastructure will continue and expand, where appropriate , to serve the leisure and recreation needs of the population and support the Borough's biodiversity.	To be in compliance with CS21.

Minor post submission change MCI	4.1	The Spatial Strategy sets out how Halton will change over the coming years; where change will happen, when it will happen and how this is to <u>it will</u> be delivered.	Minor wording amendment.
MAIN MODIFICATION MMI	Policy wording	To achieve the Vision for Halton to 2028, new development should deliver: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>A minimum of 9,000</u> 9,930 net additional dwellings 	To align with policy CS3 and conform with RSS policy L4 which states that the annual average figures are not absolute targets and may be exceeded. To take account of the 930 unit backlog accrued against the RSS target between 2003-2010.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM2	Policy wording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approximately 295 <u>313</u> ha (gross) of land for employment purposes 	Consequential amendment following changes to overall employment land provision figure in CS4.
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy wording Point 1	<p>The four areas are:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <u>3MG, (Ditton) in Widnes,</u> <u>South Widnes,</u> <u>West Runcorn,</u> <p><u>Involving the (a) R</u>egeneration of previously developed (brownfield) land within the existing urban area as Key Areas of Change at</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3MG (Ditton), in Widnes • South Widnes • West Runcorn; and <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <u>East Runcorn</u> <p><u>Delivering G</u>reenfield expansion involving including the completion of the proposals for Runcorn New Town and further extension <u>to the east</u> of Runcorn as a Key Area of Change at:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • East Runcorn <p>This specific Key Area of Change includes the <u>allocation designation</u> of a Strategic Site encompassing Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus and Daresbury Park.</p>	<p>First part of policy reordered to give greater focus to the Key Areas of Change.</p> <p>Specifying that the Strategic Site is an allocation.</p>

MAIN MODIFICATION MM1a	Policy wording Point 3	<p>In-addition <u>The housing land supply position indicates that may warrant a general partial review of Green Belt boundaries to serve the development needs arising in of Widnes and Hale will be required in the early part of the plan period prior to 2028.</u></p> <p>Additionally, <u>An area of search for a possible minor amendment of the Green Belt boundary is proposed in the west of the Borough to facilitate the planned runway extension at Liverpool John Lennon Airport.</u></p> <p><u>More detail regarding Halton's Green Belt is set out in CS6.</u></p> <p><u>Specific proposals relating to Liverpool John Lennon Airport are set out in CS17.</u></p>	<p>To specify that a Green Belt Review is required in the early part of the plan period due to limited land supply in Widnes/Hale.</p> <p><i>N.B. This incorporates/amends Changes 3&4 under policy CS1 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i></p>
MAIN MODIFICATION MM1b	4.2	Development over the plan period will predominantly be <u>should</u> focused on renewing Halton's urban landscape through the re-use of previously developed (brownfield) land, including derelict sites and those with a history of contamination particularly at South Widnes and West Runcorn.	To maintain the focus on
Minor post submission change MC3	4.3	Despite the priority to renew and improve the Borough's urban landscape through new development, it is apparent through the evidence base that not all future development can be delivered on brownfield land. Despite the Borough's strong record for bringing brownfield land back into use, much of the remaining previously developed land is highly constrained through contamination or other factors which affect development viability, therefore reducing the realistic amount of brownfield land which can <u>realistically</u> be brought back into beneficial use. At 2010, there are <u>were</u> no further housing renewal programmes, such as that nearing completion at Castlefields (Runcorn), which are planned to take place within the lifetime of the Core Strategy. In addition to the limitations on the re-use of brownfield land, development opportunities in the Borough are constrained (particularly in Widnes) by tightly defined Green Belt boundaries, limited scope for infilling, coupled with the Mersey Estuary dissecting the Borough, <u>it follows that</u> there are not a wide variety of strategic options available to accommodate future growth requirements.	Minor wording updates
MAIN MODIFICATION MM1d	4.4	Additional last sentence: <u>However, the Examination into this Plan concluded that the land supply position was such that the preferred approach be modified to include the provision for further greenfield extension(s) to meet the needs of Widnes / Hale through an early partial Green Belt review as part of the subsequent Site Allocations DPD.</u>	Additional reference to the requirement for a Green Belt Review as a result of the Examination added to section dealing with chosen strategy for future development.
MAIN MODIFICATION	4.5	Additional last sentence: <u>Similarly, the housing land supply evidenced in the SHLAA 2010 (as summarised in</u>	Additional reference to need for a Green Belt Review with reference to

MMIe		Table I below) details that just over a quarter of the Borough's potential supply lies in Widnes/Hale. This supply is to be bolstered by the identification and release of additional land for development currently within the adopted Green Belt. The scale and location of this release will be determined in a partial Green Belt review as part of the subsequent Site Allocations DPD.	the housing land supply depicted in Table I.
MAIN MODIFICATION MMIc	Table I	Changes to Table I – see below this Schedule.	Amendment to the total housing land supply figure from the 2010 Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment and consequential changes to the distribution of land supply across the Borough. <i>N.B. This also incorporates Change 5 under policy CS1 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i>
Minor post submission change MC4	4.7	For employment land there is marginally more land available in Widnes, however this supply is concentrated in a limited number of large sites forming the 3MG development, <u>much of which is expected to be developed within the first five years of the plan period.</u>	Minor wording update
MAIN MODIFICATION MMI f	4.8	The Council has commissioned a number of research studies to quantify the demand and need for different classes of development across the Borough. For housing t These indicate <u>demonstrate that the provision of new demand for additional housing can have wider benefits than simply providing accommodation and that over the plan period new supply is should favour likely to be skewed to Runcorn, which should account for about</u> 57% of the total with Widnes and Hale accounting for <u>accommodating the remaining 43%. Including an allowance for past take up (2003 to 2010) which saw Widnes significantly out-perform Runcorn, leaves a residual requirement for Widnes / Hale in excess of 4,000 dwellings, somewhat in excess of the identified supply (as detailed in Table I at 2010), indicating the need for additional land to be identified through a review of the adopted Green Belt.</u>	Amended references to the demand and supply between Runcorn and Widnes.
Minor post submission change MC5	4.9	The strategy identifies four Key Areas of Change that will be the <u>initial</u> focus for new development and where the biggest transformation of the Borough's current landscape <u>at 2010</u> is expected to occur.	Minor wording change to improve longevity of wording.

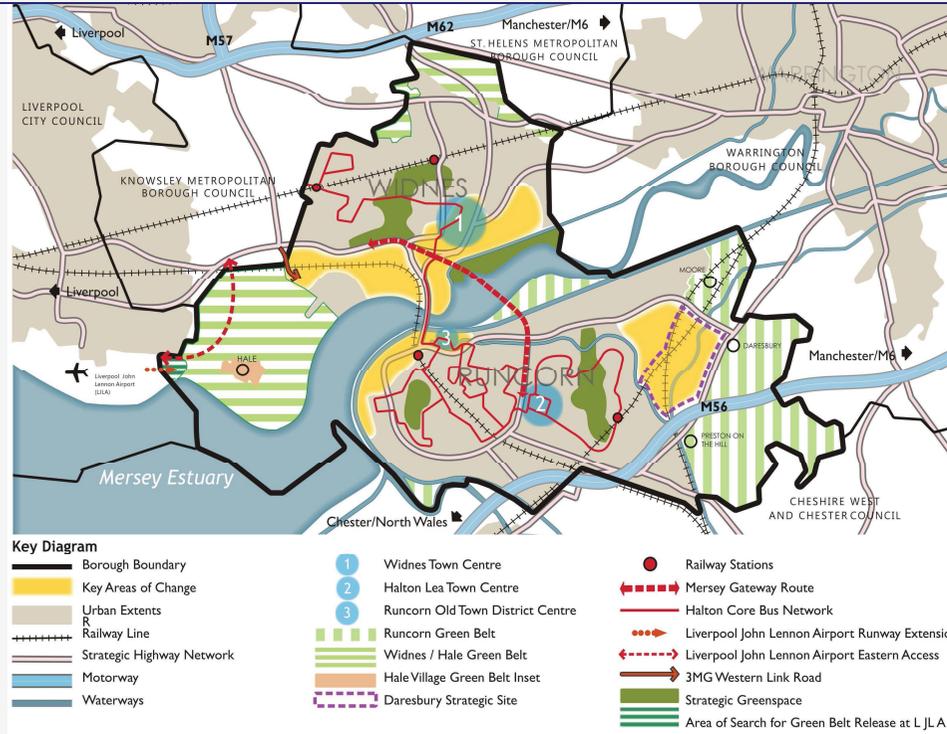
MAIN MODIFICATION MMIg	Table 2	Changes to Table 2 – see below this Schedule.	Amended housing and employment distribution to reflect increased policy requirements. (As a result of Main Modifications MMI and MM2) <i>N.B. This also incorporates/supersedes Change 7 under policy CS1 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i>
Minor post submission change MC6	4.13	Evidence from Halton’s Retail and Leisure Study ¹ suggests that there is potential to expand the bulky goods retail warehousing (DIY and gardening products, furniture, carpets, electrical goods, office supplies and toys) retail offer in the town centre, hence the requirement for <u>the</u> identified level of additional floorspace.	Minor typo – missing word. <i>N.B. Incorporates Submission change SM9 above</i>
Minor post submission change MC7	4.16	There is definite scope and impetus to build a complementary relationship for Runcorn Old Town with Halton Lea, centred around on the evening economy and cultural uses in the centre.	Minor wording change.
Minor post submission change MC8	4.17	Lying to the west of Runcorn Old Town centre, adjacent to the Riverside College Campus and recent waterside housing developments, lies Runcorn Waterfront a key development site anticipated to come forward for a mix of residential and commercial uses during the plan period.	Update as the College facility at Runcorn Waterfront is no longer in use.
Minor post submission change MC9	4.18	The realisation of this site’s potential will further strengthen and expand the Borough’s <u>growing</u> specialism in the logistics and distribution sector.	Minor wording change.
Minor post submission change MC10	4.20	Within the East Runcorn Key Area of Change, <u>part of</u> the Daresbury area is being allocated as a Strategic Site as it is a key component in Halton’s future development and will see substantial change over the lifetime of the Core Strategy. Alongside the expansion of the employment offer, a new residential community is also being promoted at Daresbury <u>Strategic Site</u> , which will not only help to meet the housing needs of the Borough’s residents, but will also connect the two existing employment areas through shared amenities and new transport routes. The residential area at Sandymoor, to the west of Daresbury, comprises approximately 147 hectares of land, of which 46 hectares have already been developed ⁵ . This comprehensive re development of the Sandymoor area will continue, creating a mixed and sustainable community supported by the facilities and services needed by local residents.	Minor change to remove reference to Daresbury which could be confused with Daresbury village. <i>N.B. Incorporates submission change SM10 above</i>

Minor post submission change MC11	4.21	In line with the spatial priorities enshrined in national planning policy, the reuse of previously used land and buildings in across the rest of Halton are high priorities for accommodating new development.	Minor wording amendment.										
Minor post submission change MC12	4.22	Halton's existing network of green infrastructure will continue remain and be expanded where appropriate , to serve the leisure and recreation needs of the population and support the Borough's biodiversity.	Minor wording change. <i>N.B. Incorporates submission change SM12 above</i>										
MAIN MODIFICATION MM1h	4.23	The rural character and setting of the Borough's villages and areas of open countryside will be maintained with limits on new development. In order to achieve this, the Green Belt will continue to be largely protected in accordance with national planning policy to prevent uncoordinated expansion of urban areas which result in the loss of strategic gaps between settlements. In addition, should the The existing housing land supply within the Borough warrant it indicates that a partial review of the extent of the Green Belt may will be required during the plan period, particularly to ensure adequate land to meet development needs of the communities north of the river of Widnes/Hale . It is proposed that Any such a review will be undertaken in the early part of the Core Strategy plan period as part of the a subsequent Site -Allocations DPD. Further detail on the future role of Halton's Green Belt is detailed in policy CS6. In addition, m Minor changes to the Green Belt boundary at the western extent of the Borough will be considered to facilitate the proposed runway extension at Liverpool John Lennon Airport, and this issue will be addressed in a later DPD. Greater detail on the development of the airport is provided in policy CS17.	Amendments to supporting text to specify that a Green Belt Review is required in the early part of the plan period due to limited housing land supply in Widnes/Hale.										
MAIN MODIFICATION MM1i	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Policy Framework</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="5">SA Objectives</td> <td>10 - Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11 – Accessibility</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13 – Education</td> </tr> <tr> <td>14 – Economy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>16 – Town Centres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Outcome</td> <td>Overall, the SA considers this policy to be significantly positive in sustainability terms. Although the level of development set out within some of the policies could have significant negative impacts on some environmental factors, these are sufficiently mitigated by</td> </tr> </table>	Policy Framework		SA Objectives	10 - Housing	11 – Accessibility	13 – Education	14 – Economy	16 – Town Centres	SA Outcome	Overall, the SA considers this policy to be significantly positive in sustainability terms. Although the level of development set out within some of the policies could have significant negative impacts on some environmental factors, these are sufficiently mitigated by	Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.
Policy Framework													
SA Objectives	10 - Housing												
	11 – Accessibility												
	13 – Education												
	14 – Economy												
	16 – Town Centres												
SA Outcome	Overall, the SA considers this policy to be significantly positive in sustainability terms. Although the level of development set out within some of the policies could have significant negative impacts on some environmental factors, these are sufficiently mitigated by												

other policy content.

Minor post submission change
MCI3

Figure 6: Key Diagram



Green Belt notation around Widnes and Hale amended to distinguish different policy treatment (proposed Green Belt Review) from the Green Belt around Runcorn (no Green Belt review).

Table I: Distribution of Identified Development Potential as at April 2010

	<u>Greenfield / Brownfield land</u>	Potential Housing Supply (SHLAA 2010)			Identified Employment Land Supply 2010		
		Dwellings	Halton %	Area %	Ha.	Halton %	Area %
3MG	Green	--		0%	24.8		26%
	Brown	--		0%	70.0		74%
		0	0%		94.8	48%	
South Widnes	Green	--		0%	15.8		61%
	Brown	876 741		100%	9.9		39%
		876 741	8%		25.7	13%	
Widnes / Hale (ALL)	Green	1,466		48% 50%	40.6		32%
	Brown	1,595 1,460		52% 50%	86.8		68%
		3,061 2,926	27%		127.4	64%	
East Runcorn	Green	3,024		100%	49.2		100%
	Brown	--		0%	--		0%
		3,024	27%		49.2	25%	
West Runcorn	Green	75		4%	--		0%
	Brown	2,058 2,013		96%	0.3		100%
		2,133 2,088	19%		0.3	0%	
Runcorn (ALL)	Green	5,409 5,276		66% 67%	7.0		10%
	Brown	2,798		34%	63.4		90%

		<u>2,653</u>		<u>33%</u>			
		8,207	73%			70.4	36%
HALTON (ALL)	Green	6,875 <u>6,742</u>		61% <u>62%</u>		47.6	24%
	Brown	4,393 <u>4,113</u>		39% <u>38%</u>		150.2	76%
		11,268 <u>11,855</u>	100%			197.8	100%

Extract from Table 2: Anticipated Distribution of Development / Development Land 2010 to 2028

	WIDNES / HALE				RUNCORN				TOTAL
	Key Area of Change		Other *	TOTAL	Key Area of Change		Other *	TOTAL	
	3MG	South Widnes			West Runcorn	East Runcorn			
Housing (net dwelling gain)	--	400	3,500 <u>3,470</u>	3,900 <u>3,870</u> (43%) (39%)	1,500	2,800	800 <u>1,760</u>	5,100 <u>6,060</u> (57%) (61%)	9,000 <u>9,930</u> (100%)
Employment (Ha)	99 <u>103</u>	30 <u>54</u>	28 <u>32</u>	189 <u>(61%)</u>	27 <u>26</u>	66	45 <u>32</u>	124 <u>(39%)</u>	295.0 <u>313</u>

CS2: SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT PRINCIPLES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SMI	5.3	As a result, the Sustainable Development Principles reflect the current social, economic and environmental needs of the Borough...	Comma missing. N.B. Change superseded by subsequent main change
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	Policy Title	CS2: PRESUMPTION IN FAVOUR OF SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT PRINCIPLES	Policy title changed to reflect change to incorporate PINS 'model policy' regarding NPPF compliance
Minor post submission change MCI	5.1	The overall Spatial Strategy as set out in CS1 establishes the spatial distribution of future growth and development in the Borough. The <u>presumption in favour of Sustainable Development Principles</u> exists alongside the Spatial Strategy in order to ensure that <u>a positive approach is taken to development proposals, delivering</u> growth and development <u>that is sustainable and will meet</u> the needs of Halton's present communities, <u>and planning whilst considering for</u> the needs of future communities over the lifetime of the Core Strategy. All development in the Borough is required to <u>comply with the National Planning Policy Framework</u> contribute towards these principles in order to ensure a sustainable Halton, now and in the future.	Preamble amended to reflect amended policy wording and contents for NPPF.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM	Policy wording	Policy CS2: Presumption in Favour of Sustainable Development Principles <u>When considering development proposals, the Council will take a positive approach that reflects the presumption in favour of sustainable development contained in the National Planning Policy Framework. It will always work proactively with applicants jointly to find solutions which mean that proposals can be approved wherever possible, and to secure development that improves the economic, social and environmental conditions in the area.</u> <u>Planning applications that accord with the policies in this Local Plan¹ (and, where relevant, with policies in Halton's other Local Plans and neighbourhood plans) will be approved without delay, unless material considerations indicate otherwise.</u> <u>Where there are no policies relevant to the application or relevant policies are out of</u>	Deletion of previous policy wording and substitution with Planning Advisory Service (NPPF compliant) 'model policy' on presumption in favour of sustainable development

		<p>date at the time of making the decision then the Council will grant permission unless material considerations indicate otherwise – taking into account whether:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Any adverse impacts of granting permission would significantly and demonstrably outweigh the benefits, when assessed against the policies in the National Planning Policy Framework taken as a whole; or</u> • <u>Specific policies in that Framework indicate that development should be restricted.</u> <p>Over the lifetime of the Halton Core Strategy, development in the Borough should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • contribute towards the delivery of mixed and balanced communities; • increase the quality of life for the Borough's communities, contributing to long term improvements in health and well-being, educational attainment and skill development; • contribute towards a strong, stable and more competitive economy, responsive to Halton's needs and building upon Halton's strengths; • be located to minimise the need to travel, increase accessibility and support sustainable transport options; • regenerate and remediate Halton, bringing noticeable improvements to the Borough's urban areas and green spaces; • conserve and enhance the character and quality of Halton's natural and historic environment and green infrastructure network; • minimise factors which contribute to climate change and plan for the potential effects of a changing climate on the Borough's communities and environments; • minimise energy and water use and make efficient use of natural resources including through sustainable waste management and maximising the re-use of recycled products; and, • ensure that the infrastructure needs of the Borough are met. 	
<p>Minor post submission change MC2</p>	<p>Policy wording Footnote</p>	<p><u>The Halton Core Strategy is a Local Plan under the National Planning Policy Framework and Local Planning Regulations 2012. For the purposes of the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004, Local Plans are prescribed as Development Plan Documents.</u></p>	<p>Footnote added to aid clarity between previous and new terminology.</p>
<p>MAIN</p>	<p>5.2</p>	<p>'Sustainable development' is defined as "development which meets the needs of the</p>	<p>Amended wording to reflect</p>

MODIFICATION MM		<p>present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs”⁹. The National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) National guidance in the form of PPS 1: Delivering Sustainable Development² states that emphasises the three dimensions to sustainable development, these being should be delivered through achieving:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • social progress which recognises the needs of everyone An economic role – contributing to building a strong, responsive and competitive economy; • protection and enhancement of the environment A social role – supporting strong, vibrant and healthy communities; and, • prudent use of natural resources; and An environmental role – contributing to protecting and enhancing our natural, built and historic environment. • sustainable economic development. 	introduction of the NPPF and amendments to policy wording.
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy wording Footnote	CLG (2005) Planning Policy Statement 1: Delivering Sustainable Development	Footnote deleted as consequential change to deletion of reference to PPS1 in para 5.2
MAIN MODIFICATION MM	5.3	<p>The NPPF introduced the presumption in favour of sustainable development which emphasises the Government’s positive attitude to development that is sustainable, impressing on Local Planning Authorities the importance of expediting planning applications which are in conformity. The whole of the NPPF sets out the Government’s view of what sustainable development means in practical terms for the planning process. The Core Strategy (as part of Halton’s development plan) is the first reference point for those involved in the determination of planning applications. The NPPF makes it clear that local planning documents should reflect the presumption and hence the above policy fulfils this requirement. In accordance with other policies in the NPPF, it should be noted that the presumption does not apply to development where Appropriate Assessment under the Birds or Habitats Directive is required or for development proposals on land designated as a Site of Special Scientific Interest, Green Belt, Local Green Space, designated heritage assets or locations at risk of flooding or coastal erosion. To achieve sustainable development across Halton a number of principles have been agreed. These sustainable development principles are informed by the Borough’s drivers of change and respond to Halton’s challenges as set out in Halton’s Story of Place. As a result the Sustainable Development Principles</p>	Amended wording to reflect introduction of the NPPF and amendments to policy wording.

		reflect the current social, economic and environmental needs of the Borough whilst building upon the aims of sustainable development at the national level.			
MAIN MODIFICATION MM	5.4	<p>The aims of the NPPF will be delivered through development in Halton:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>contributing towards the delivery of mixed and balanced communities;</u> • <u>increasing the quality of life for the Borough’s communities, contributing to long term improvements in health and well-being, educational attainment and skill development;</u> • <u>contributing towards a strong, stable and more competitive economy, responding to Halton’s needs and building upon Halton’s strengths;</u> • <u>being located to minimise the need to travel, increasing accessibility and supporting sustainable transport options;</u> • <u>regenerating and remediating Halton, bringing noticeable improvements to the Borough’s urban areas and green spaces;</u> • <u>conserving and enhancing the character and quality of Halton’s natural and historic environment and green infrastructure network;</u> • <u>minimising factors which contribute to climate change and plan for the potential effects of a changing climate on the Borough’s communities and environments;</u> • <u>minimising energy and water use and making efficient use of natural resources including through sustainable waste management and maximising the re-use of recycled products; and,</u> • <u>ensuring that the infrastructure needs of the Borough are met.</u> 	Amended wording to reflect introduction of the NPPF and amendments to policy wording.		
MAIN MODIFICATION MM	5.5	In order to achieve sustainable development in Halton over the plan period, all development <u>proposals</u> , where appropriate, will be assessed against <u>the above policy and against the principles in the NPPF. The other policies in the Core Strategy set out how the NPPF will be applied locally.</u> The Sustainable Development Principles are therefore integral to the delivery of the Core Strategy and are amplified throughout the plan.	Amended wording to reflect introduction of the NPPF and amendments to policy wording.		
Minor post submission change MC4	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); NPPF (Principally paras 6-16). Securing the Future (HM Gov, 2005)</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); NPPF (Principally paras 6-16). Securing the Future (HM Gov, 2005)	Amendment to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); NPPF (Principally paras 6-16). Securing the Future (HM Gov, 2005)				

Minor post submission change MC5	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Local Evidence</td> <td>Halton - State of the Borough (HBC, 2010 2011)</td> </tr> </table>	Local Evidence	Halton - State of the Borough (HBC, 2010 2011)	Amendment to reference updated background report																				
Local Evidence	Halton - State of the Borough (HBC, 2010 2011)																								
MAIN MODIFICATION MM	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="10">SA Objectives</td> <td>1 – Cultural Heritage</td> <td>10 – Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 – Biodiversity</td> <td>11 – Accessibility</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 – Water Quality</td> <td>12 – Health</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 – Climate Change</td> <td>13 – Education</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 – Flood Risk</td> <td>14 – Economy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 – Energy Efficiency</td> <td>15 – Leisure and Tourism</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 – Land Quality</td> <td>16 – Town Centres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8 – Air Quality</td> <td>17 – Transport</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9 – Waste</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Outcome</td> <td colspan="2">The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms as it has positive benefits for all of the SA objectives. However, the NPPF has removed the national brownfield target for housing development, which could pose a threat to soil and land resources in the longer term. However, this is partly mitigated by the Core Strategy emphasis on the use of previously developed land to meet housing and employment needs.</td> </tr> </table>	SA Objectives	1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing	2 – Biodiversity	11 – Accessibility	3 – Water Quality	12 – Health	4 – Climate Change	13 – Education	5 – Flood Risk	14 – Economy	6 – Energy Efficiency	15 – Leisure and Tourism	7 – Land Quality	16 – Town Centres	8 – Air Quality	17 – Transport	9 – Waste		SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms as it has positive benefits for all of the SA objectives. However, the NPPF has removed the national brownfield target for housing development, which could pose a threat to soil and land resources in the longer term. However, this is partly mitigated by the Core Strategy emphasis on the use of previously developed land to meet housing and employment needs.		Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.
SA Objectives	1 – Cultural Heritage	10 – Housing																							
	2 – Biodiversity	11 – Accessibility																							
	3 – Water Quality	12 – Health																							
	4 – Climate Change	13 – Education																							
	5 – Flood Risk	14 – Economy																							
	6 – Energy Efficiency	15 – Leisure and Tourism																							
	7 – Land Quality	16 – Town Centres																							
	8 – Air Quality	17 – Transport																							
	9 – Waste																								
	SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms as it has positive benefits for all of the SA objectives. However, the NPPF has removed the national brownfield target for housing development, which could pose a threat to soil and land resources in the longer term. However, this is partly mitigated by the Core Strategy emphasis on the use of previously developed land to meet housing and employment needs.																							

Exec

CS3: HOUSING LAND SUPPLY AND LOCATIONAL PRIORITIES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording	8000 <u>9,000</u> net additional new homes (net of demolitions) should be provided between 2010 and 2026 <u>2028</u> ...	In response to representation received (Great Lime Holdings - 01157/00002/003) To bring the policy in line with CSI and clarify that losses due to other reasons (change of use, conversions) will be deducted from total homes constructed. N.B.Superseded by Main Change MM##
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording	To ensure the efficient use of land, a minimum density <u>on individual sites</u> of 30 dwellings per hectare (dph) will be sought.	To clarify approach.
Submission Change SM3	6.4	The process for reaching this target is set out in the supporting document “ <u>Halton</u> Housing Topic Paper” ³ . ³ HBC (2011) <u>Halton</u> Housing Topic Paper	Full title of supporting document.
Submission Change SM4	6.8	This appears sufficient to meet the Borough’s housing requirement to 2028 and potentially for a number of years of beyond, however the distribution is heavily skewed to south of the river <u>towards Runcorn</u> and it must ...	To add clarity.
Submission Change SM5	6.9	In addition to identified sites, windfall sites (not previously identified in the SHLAA as having the potential to deliver housing) and therefore not factored into <u>the</u> potential housing supply figure) continue to come forward and generate units.	Bracket in incorrect place and wording amendment.
Submission Change SM6	6.10	Developers are encouraged to prioritise the development of previously developed land in accordance with Policy CSI.	Full stop missing.

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM7	6.10	Halton has long worked in partnership with others, including the Homes and Communities Agency (and its predecessors) to pioneer new and innovative ways of tackling the Borough's particular brownfield legacy ^{1,2} ¹ HCA (2010) Halton Local Brownfield Strategy ² Arup (2010) Greenfield: Brownfield Exchange Concept	Footnotes inserted to support statement.
Submission Change SM8	6.11	Previously , PPS3: Housing sets a national minimum standard for development on brownfield land of 60% ¹ , whilst Regional Spatial Strategy for the North West (RSS) set a shared target of 80 ⁶⁵ % for Halton and St Helens. ¹ CLG (2011) Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing, paragraph 41	Incorrect reference to national guidance and incorrect percentage from RSS. Superseded by post submission minor change MC## (below)
Submission Change SM9	6.11	The Coalition Government amended PPG3 in 2010 to delete this requirement and has stated its intentions to revoke RSS and to remove the national target for the amount of housing development that should take place on previously developed land ¹ . ¹ CLG (2011) Letter to Chief Planning Officers: Planning for Growth 31 March 2011 (available at: www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1878047.pdf)	Incorrect reference to national guidance.
Submission Change SM10	6.11	Delivery over the previous 15 years has varied significantly, with a high of almost 90% of new dwellings built on brownfield land in 2008/09, compared to a low of only 8% delivered in 1997/98 ^{1998/99} , averaging 49% over the 15 years.	Incorrect dates given.
Submission Change SM11	6.11	Delivery of housing on Brownfield land delivery has varied over this period reflecting the focus of delivery year to year, with greenfield sites in locations such as Upton Rocks, <u>Widnes</u> being balanced with urban regeneration schemes such as Castlefields, <u>Runcorn</u> .	Wording amendments and to add clarity.
Submission Change SM12	6.12	As discussed in the Spatial Strategy, due to the phased approach in which the <u>Runcorn</u> New Town has been constructed,...	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM13	6.13	This shows of the identified supply, only 38 ³⁹ % is on previously developed land.	Typo.

Minor post submission change MC1	6.1	Whilst the resident population has stabilised over recent years and it is projected to experience modest growth rates to 2028, however changing demographics <u>age structures, and housing needs of residents and decreasing size of the average household</u> has meant even faster growth in the number of households, placing pressure on Halton's current housing stock.	Minor wording changes.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3a	6.2	As indicated in both Halton's Story of Place and the Spatial Strategy, over the Borough's history development has taken place in distinct waves of urban <u>expansion with large scale</u> regeneration <u>schemes</u> often involving the replacement of unsuitable New Town estates, coupled with growth of the Borough onto expansion land at the edges of the urban area. Whilst this pattern of development will continue to a certain extent, housing renewal projects <u>are likely to will</u> play less of a role in the future and the Borough will be more dependent on delivering housing on <u>Halton's</u> remaining greenfield sites at the periphery of the urban area. <u>In Runcorn this will be achieved by the delivery of an extension to the east of Runcorn on greenfield land within the existing settlement boundary. In Widnes and Hale the existing Green Belt boundaries are tight to the existing built-up area and any further outward expansion will necessitate a review of the Green Belt to identify additional developable and deliverable land, whilst not undermining the continued priority to regenerate the Borough's urban areas.</u>	Amendments to the introductory text to introduce the need for a Green Belt Review.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3	Policy wording Point 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>A minimum of 9,000-9,930 net additional new homes (net of demolitions)</u> should be provided between 2010 and 2028 at an <u>minimum average</u> rate of <u>552 per annum, with the following overall distribution:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Runcorn = about 6,060 dwellings</u> • <u>Widnes = about 3,870 dwellings</u> • 400 units per annum for the period Apr 2010-Mar 2015 • 600 units per annum for the period Apr 2015-Mar 2020 • 500 units per annum for the period Apr 2020-Mar 2028 • Beyond 2028, development should continue at a minimum rate of 500 units per annum (net gain) unless this is superseded by a change to policy. 	<p>To take account of the 930 unit backlog accrued against the RSS target between 2003-2010.</p> <p>Deletion of phasing from policy recognition that PPS3 (para 64 for housing delivery to vary within acceptable range (+/- 10-20%).</p> <p><i>N.B. Incorporates and updates s change SM1</i></p>
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy wording	Insert new title for second section of policy: <u>Potential Housing Supply</u>	Consistency with rest of policy

Comment [AC1]:
FIGURES BASED ON 43:57 SPLIT FOR DEVELOPMENT FROM 2010 WITH BACKLOG ATTRIBUTED TO RUNCORN. - PRECISE FIGURES TO BE CONFIRMED WITH INSPECTOR PRIOR TO PUBLICATION

MAIN MODIFICATION MM3b	Policy wording Point 2	Delete final bullet under the New homes will be delivered a variety of sources, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Areas of Search within the Green Belt (subject to identification in a Strategic Green Belt Review) 	Deletion of this part of the policy as it has been superseded by the commitment to a Green Belt Review.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3c	Policy wording Point 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>• A partial Green Belt Review will be necessary during the early part of the plan period to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of deliverable development land to meet the housing requirements of the Borough's separate communities as set out in CSI and CS6</u> 	Addition of a requirement for a partial Green Belt Review for housing land supply purposes.
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy wording	Final para under Potential Housing Supply: In order to deliver sites that are identified as having the potential to contribute to housing supply, are available and will realistically deliver housing development , specific sites will be identified in the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD or other applicable DPDs.	Minor wording changes.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3d	Policy wording	Maintaining a 5 year supply <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In accordance with the relevant annual target(s) for housing delivery, the Council will seek to maintain a 5 year supply of deliverable housing land across the Borough in accordance with Government guidance. • In addition, the Council will seek to maintain a 5 year supply of deliverable housing sites to meet the identified needs of Runcorn and Widnes / Hale. • If the Council is unable to identify an ongoing 5 year supply of sites for residential development, there will be a presumption in favour of the development of suitable 'windfall' sites and if necessary, the Council may undertake a Strategic Green Belt Review to inform a Site Allocations DPD in line with the provisions in Policy CS6. 	Deletion of reference to monitoring 5 year supply north and south of the river as a trigger mechanism for Green Belt Review as a commitment to a review has now been included in the policy.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3e	6.3	Setting a housing target <u>Housing Requirement</u> The Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) for the North West set a housing policy target for Halton of 500 <u>units (net dwelling gain)</u> per annum for over the period 2003 to 2021 <u>and for any period thereafter until such time as the policy is reviewed</u> <u>As highlighted in policy CS1, the Government has indicated its intention to abolish Regional Strategies, however, until such time as RSS for the North West is legally revoked, it remains part of the Development Plan and the Halton Core Strategy must be in general conformity with its provisions. In the initial RSS period to 2010, Halton had delivered a total of 2,570 units (net gain) representing a shortfall of 930 dwellings</u>	Addition of text explaining the shortfall accrued against RSS targets between 2003-2010 which has now been added into the policy requirement.

		against the RSS requirement of 3,500 (500x7 years). In order to comply with the RSS, Halton will need to deliver 9,000 dwellings (500 x 18 Years) plus the pre-existing backlog, equating to an annual average of 552 (9,930 / 18 years) dwellings (net gain).	
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3f	6.3	Whilst this RSS remains part of the Development Plan for Halton at May 2011, the Coalition Government has indicated its intention to revoke all regional strategies with After the abolition of RSS, the role of determining an appropriate number of homes to be built within each district will falling to the local authority through the Core Strategy or Local Plan. This policy, together with CSI may therefore be subject to an early review dependent on the date and circumstances at the time the powers to revoke are enacted. Local housing targets are necessary to help deliver the required level of house building to meet local needs whilst giving certainty for residents and the development industry in terms of how much residential development a local area should accommodate in future years.	Updated situation regarding the position after RSS.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3g	6.3	The housing target of 9,000 new homes at an average rate of 500 homes per year in Halton over the Core Strategy plan period to 2028 has been determined by considering data and research from a variety of sources, including predicted population, household and economic growth. The process for reaching this target is set out in the supporting document "Housing Topic Paper".³	Deleted paragraph as no longer relevant.
Minor post submission change MC4	6.5	The RSS housing policy is at targets which have been set represent a level which will meet forecasted locally arising household growth over the plan period, whilst also allowing for a degree of further growth across the Borough.	Minor wording changes.
Minor post submission change MC5	6.6	The proposed housing figure is marginally above the projected growth in households, however this level has been set to promote modest growth in Halton and to enable a range of housing types to be provided.	Minor wording changes and to reflect increase in annual housing requirement.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3h	6.6	Whilst sufficient land to accommodate the bulk of this growth exists in Runcorn, the Examination into this Plan concluded that an early review of the Green Belt around Widnes and Hale is required to meet the needs of these populations.	Addition of supporting text regarding the need for a Green Belt Review.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3i	6.7	Housing delivery and demand is strongly correlated with the state of the economy, Economic forecasts vary in their predictions for when the economy will recover from the effects of the 'credit crunch' and resultant economic downturn, and for when capacity within the house building industry will return to pre-recession levels. In setting the housing targets, the effects of the economic downturn have been acknowledged with a lower target set for the initial 5 years (in line with the approach for employment land as set out in CS4), before increasing in the following period to	Deletion of paragraph relating to the phasing element of the policy which has now been deleted.

		deliver the overall quantum required to 2028.	
MAIN MODIFICATION MM3j	6.8	The 2010 Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment (SHLAA) indicates d that there is identified land in the Borough with the capacity to deliver 11,268 <u>10,866</u> dwellings (gross). Whilst this is in excess of the (net) policy requirement to 2028, it allows little flexibility to accommodate changes in demolition rates or identified sites not coming forward as forecast. Whilst the SHLAA process seeks to provide a robust 'snap-shot' estimate of potential housing supply. This appears sufficient to meet the Borough's housing requirement to 2028 and potentially for a number of years beyond, however the distribution is heavily skewed to south of the river and it must be accepted <u>noted</u> that not all of the identified sites in the SHLAA will be delivered for housing or come forward in the timeframes indicated. Indeed, it may not be desirable for certain sites to be developed for housing uses other than <u>rather than other uses</u> housing. The identified supply is heavily skewed towards Runcorn, particularly due to the Key Area of Change at East Runcorn which includes <u>Sandymoor and Daresbury.</u>	Update to text regarding housing land supply position across the Borough.
Minor post submission change MC6	New paragraph after 6.9	Maintaining a five year supply <u>NPPF requires local authorities ensure that a rolling five year supply (+5%) of deliverable housing sites can be demonstrated. This is increased to 5 years +20% where there is a consistent under-delivery. Halton's five year supply of housing land is detailed within the Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment which is updated regularly and performance is also monitored through Annual Monitoring Reports.</u>	Insertion of new paragraph briefly explaining 5 year supply to follow the format of the policy.
Minor post submission change MC7	6.9 New footnote	<u>National Planning Policy Framework (para. 47)</u>	Reference to new national guidance.
Minor post submission change MC8	6.9	<u>To support urban renewal within Halton, maximise the sustainable use of existing infrastructure and minimise the need to release Green Belt land priority will be given to</u> Developers are encouraged to prioritise the development of previously developed land in accordance with <u>the target and principles set out in</u> Policy CSI.	
Minor post submission change MC9	6.11	Previously PPS3: Housing set a national minimum standard for development on brownfield land of 60%, whilst Regional Spatial Strategy for the North West (RSS) set a shared target of 65% <u>of residential development in</u> for Halton and St.Helens <u>to be built on previously developed land.</u>	Deleting reference to PPS3 which was cancelled in March 2012 with the publication of NPPF.
Minor post	New paragraph	Of the housing expected to come forward during the plan period or being promoted	Minor amendments to text to detail that

<p>submission change MC10</p>	<p>after 6.12</p>	<p>through the Core Strategy, a high proportion is are on greenfield sites. Evidence base documents⁸² and Appendix I contain an assessment of the proportion of ongoing supply forecast to arise on previously developed land. This shows <u>that</u> of the identified supply <u>(before any allowance for additional greenfield supply through Green Belt release)</u>, only 3839% is on previously developed land.</p> <p>Delete Footnote: ⁵HBC (2011) Housing Topic Paper ⁶GL Hearn and Justin Gardner Consulting (2011) Halton Strategic Housing Market Assessment HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010</p>	<p>2010 SHLAA figures excludes consideration of sites within the Green Belt.</p> <p>N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SM13</p>																
<p>MAIN MODIFICATION MM3k</p>	<p>Policy Framework</p>	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) NPFF (Particularly para.s 14, 15, 17,18, 23, 28, 29, 42, 47, 50, 79, 151, 154 and 156)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Objectives</td> <td>4 – Climate Change</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>5 – Flood Risk</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>7 – Land Quality</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>10 - Housing</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>12 – Health</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>17 – Transport</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Outcome</td> <td>The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms. Although development is likely to have <u>significant</u> impacts on some environmental factors these can be managed / mitigated.</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) NPFF (Particularly para.s 14, 15, 17,18, 23, 28, 29, 42, 47, 50, 79, 151, 154 and 156)	SA Objectives	4 – Climate Change		5 – Flood Risk		7 – Land Quality		10 - Housing		12 – Health		17 – Transport	SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms. Although development is likely to have <u>significant</u> impacts on some environmental factors these can be managed / mitigated.	<p>Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.</p>
National Policy	PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) NPFF (Particularly para.s 14, 15, 17,18, 23, 28, 29, 42, 47, 50, 79, 151, 154 and 156)																		
SA Objectives	4 – Climate Change																		
	5 – Flood Risk																		
	7 – Land Quality																		
	10 - Housing																		
	12 – Health																		
	17 – Transport																		
SA Outcome	The SA considers this policy to be positive in sustainability terms. Although development is likely to have <u>significant</u> impacts on some environmental factors these can be managed / mitigated.																		

CS4: EMPLOYMENT LAND SUPPLY AND LOCATIONAL PRIORITIES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording (Third bullet)	Contribute towards the priorities of the employment offer in the sub-regiona l	Typo.
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording (Maintaining existing employment areas – first bullet)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any proposals for non-employment uses within existing employment areas should be accompanied by an examination of the wider employment land situation in the Borough, including a consideration of: 	Mistake – repeats previous sentence.
Submission Change SM3	7.6	The current supply situation in table 3 indicates an apparent undersupply of approximately 85 ⁸⁶ hectares of land for employment purposes.	Typo.
Submission Change SM4	7.7	This equates to 72.35 hectares of suitable and available land (using the long term average take up rate <u>after the initial 5 year period</u>). Annual surveys of employment land ^{INSERT FOOTNOTE} and planning applications will allow the supply of employment land to be assessed. <small>FOOTNOTE 5</small> HBC - Annual Employment Baseline Reports	To add clarity re. how 5 year supply will be monitored.
Submission Change SM5	7.7	Should a shortfall in employment land supply be identified over the plan period (for instance if, regeneration and remodelling <u>opportunities</u> do not come forward as envisaged),...	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM6	7.8	The Borough currently has two employment areas of regional significance at 3MG and at the combined area of Daresbury Park and Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus. These areas were identified by the NWDA as Strategic Regional Sites through the <u>in both the 2003 and 2006</u> North West Regional Economic <u>Strategies Strategy (2006)</u> and more recently through a reassessment of employment sites in the region.	In response to representations received (NWDA – S015/00002/003)
MAIN MODIFICATION MM4	Policy wording	Approximately 295 ³¹³ hectares of land will be made available over the plan period 2010-2028 to facilitate the sustainable growth of Halton's economy.	To reflect the removal of the allowance for the current period of economic downturn and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery

			Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings).
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any proposals for non-employment uses within existing employment areas should be accompanied by an examination of the wider employment land situation in the Borough, including a consideration of: 	Deletion of duplicated text
MAIN MODIFICATION MM5	7.4	<p>Given that the JELPS was produced using a base date of April 2008, before the effects of the current period of economic downturn were felt, it has been necessary to amend the recommended employment land requirement to take account of reduced take-up rates over the period of downturn. Current estimations suggest that the current period of economic downturn in the UK will continue until 2015, before the economy will experience significant growth as prior to 2008. The JELPS considered employment land requirements for the Borough to 2026, however given that the study advocated the use of long term average take-up rates to predict future requirements, it therefore followed that the same method be applied to generate the additional employment land requirement for the Core Strategy plan period to 2028. <u>Estimations at 2011 suggest that the period of economic downturn in the UK being experienced at the start of the plan period will continue until 2015, before the economy will experience significant growth as prior to 2008. The use of long term average take up rates dating back to 1992 are felt to make adequate provision for periods of both economic downturn and growth that are likely to be experienced over the length of the plan period.</u></p>	To reflect the removal of the allowance for the current period of economic downturn and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings).
MAIN MODIFICATION MM6	7.5	<p>Table 3 below sets out the calculations which determine the overall requirement for employment land provision to be made over the Core Strategy plan period. revised calculation of an annual requirement for employment land, assuming demand at 80% of the long term average take-up rate, for the period from 2010-2015, therefore giving a slightly lower requirement for employment land than included within the JELPS.</p>	To reflect the removal of the allowance for the current period of economic downturn and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings).
MAIN MODIFICATION	Table 3	Changes to Table 3 – see below this Schedule.	To reflect the removal of the allowance for the current period of economic

MM7			downturn and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings).
MAIN MODIFICATION MM8	7.6	The current supply situation in table 3 indicates an apparent undersupply of approximately 85 -103 hectares of land for employment purposes.	To reflect the removal of the allowance for the current period of economic downturn and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings). N.B. Superseded previous submission minor change SM3 (above)
MAIN MODIFICATION MM9	7.7	In order to ensure that an adequate supply of employment land is available for development at any one time, a minimum of a 5 year supply of sites should be maintained. This equates to 72.35 hectares of suitable and available land. Annual surveys of employment land ¹ and planning applications will allow the supply of employment land to be assessed. A full review of the deliverability and suitability of the remaining Halton UDP employment allocations and the identified regeneration and remodelling opportunities will be undertaken as part of the first Site Allocations Local Plan (DPD) and will be kept under review thereafter. Should a shortfall in employment land supply be identified over the plan period (for instance if, regeneration and remodelling do not come forward as envisaged) , sites will be allocated through a Site Allocations DPD subsequent Local Plans in order to increase the overall supply of land available for employment development. ¹ HBC – Annual Employment Baseline Reports	To make the justification to the policy clearer and to address the comments made at the Hearing Sessions by Emery Planning (on behalf of ADS Recycling), Peel Holdings Management and Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings). N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SM4 and supersedes change SM5
Minor post submission change MC2	7.10	The boundaries and extent of the above local and regional employment areas and of land to be prioritised for future employment use will be set out in the Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD , but in the intervening period, the	Amendment to update terminology.

		Primarily Employment Areas notation on the Halton UDP proposals map will continue to be used. For the existing employment areas which fall within the Key Areas of Change, more detailed policy on future uses and the broad location of the employment areas is shown on diagrams within each of the relevant policies. As with the other existing employment areas, the precise extent of these areas will be defined in the Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD . For Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus and Daresbury Park, policy CS11 should be referred to for the boundaries of the areas allocated for employment use at the Strategic Site.			
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably, para.s 20, 21, 22, 161, 182)</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably, para.s 20, 21, 22, 161, 182)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably, para.s 20, 21, 22, 161, 182)				

	Hectares
Long term average take up rate (1998-2008)	14.47
Requirement during period of economic slowdown 2010/11-2014/15	
Reduced rate of take-up during period of economic downturn (@ 80%)	11.576
Requirement over 5 year period	57.88
Requirement during period of economic recovery 2015/16-2027/28 over Core Strategy plan period	
Long term average take up rate (1992-2008)	14.47
Rate of take-up post period of economic downturn	14.47
Requirement over 13 18 year period	188.11
	260.46
Sub-total of land required over 2010/11-2027/28	245.99

Total land requirement including 20% flexibility factor to maintain a range and choice of sites throughout the plan period	295.19 312.55	
LESS		
Outstanding employment land allocations at April 2010 ¹		163.33
Sites with planning permission for employment uses at April 2010		28.31
Additional land allocated for employment purposes at East Runcorn (through Policy CS11)		17.62
Total available employment land at April 2010		209.26
Total perceived employment land undersupply		85.93 103.29
Additional supply with the potential to come forward over the plan period		
Land proposed to be regenerated for employment purposes at West Runcorn	14.00	
Opportunities for remodelling and regeneration of sites within existing employment areas	130.55	
Total potential surplus*	58.62 41.26	

CS5: A NETWORK OF CENTRES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording	Hale Parade Ivy Farm Court, Hale	Hale Parade not recognised as the name of the local centre by local residents.
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording	The Boundaries for Widnes Town Centre, Halton Lea and Runcorn Old Town are as defined in Appendix 2: Town and District Centre Boundaries.	Update title of Appendix.
Submission Change SM3	Policy wording	Retail and leisure proposals in excess of 200 sqm (gross) not within or adjacent to a defined centre, or allocated in the LDF will be subject to sequential assessment.	Missing words.
Submission Change SM4	8.2	The Halton Retail and Leisure Study (2009) looks ahead only to 2026, which was considered the limit for robust projections and forecasts. The precise level of floorspace that can be supported is dependant dependent upon a number of factors, including household incomes, market share and the type and mix of retail developments delivered.	Full title of evidence base document and spelling error.
Submission Change SM5	8.3	The Council's main administrative headquarters are located to the south west adjacent to Riverside College (Runcorn Campus) (Kingsway Campus, Widnes) and other civic and leisure functions.	Error.
Submission Change SM6	8.9	The Halton Retail and Leisure Study identifies...	Full title of evidence base document.
Submission Change SM7	8.11	Separated from its natural catchment areas by canals, rail and road infrastructure the centre struggled to maintain market share with residents choosing to shop at Halton Lea, in Widnes or further afield.	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM8	8.12	The Halton Retail and Leisure Study identifies...	Full title of evidence base document.
Minor post submission change MCI	Para 8.1	It is important to define and protect the retail hierarchy to ensure new development is secured and focused in appropriate locations to enhance and strengthen the Borough's retail offer for the benefit of all residents .	Minor amendments to aid clarity
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy wording	The following hierarchy of centres will be maintained and enhanced for retail and other main town centre uses (as defined in the NPPF PPS4) in order to provide access to a wide range of shops, employment and associated services for all sections of the community.	Deleting reference to PPS4 which was cancelled in March 2012 with the publication of NPPF.

		Amendment to Footnote 1: ¹ CLG (2009 2012) National Planning Policy Framework: Annex 2 Glossary Statement 4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth			
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy - footnote	1 CLG (2009 2012) National Planning Policy Framework: Annex 2 Glossary Statement 4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth	Deleting reference to PPS4 which was cancelled in March 2012 with the publication of NPPF.		
Minor post submission change MC4	Policy wording	<table border="1"> <tr> <td> Runcorn Ascot Avenue Beechwood Brook Vale Castlefields Greenway Road Halton Brook Halton Lodge Halton Road Halton View Road Halton Village Langdale Road Murdishaw Centre Palacefields Picton Avenue Preston Brook Russell Road The Grangeway Windmill Hill </td> <td> Widnes Alexander Drive Beechers Cronton Lane Ditchfield Road Farnworth Hale Bank Hale Road Halton View Road Langdale Road Liverpool Road Moorfield Road Queens Avenue Warrington Road West Bank Hale Hale Parade Ivy Farm Court, Hale </td> </tr> </table>	Runcorn Ascot Avenue Beechwood Brook Vale Castlefields Greenway Road Halton Brook Halton Lodge Halton Road Halton View Road Halton Village Langdale Road Murdishaw Centre Palacefields Picton Avenue Preston Brook Russell Road The Grange way Windmill Hill	Widnes Alexander Drive Beechers Cronton Lane Ditchfield Road Farnworth Hale Bank Hale Road Halton View Road Langdale Road Liverpool Road Moorfield Road Queens Avenue Warrington Road West Bank Hale Hale Parade Ivy Farm Court, Hale	Minor amendments to correct local centres listed under the wrong town and update centres titles (centres listed remain the same) <i>N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SMI (above)</i>
Runcorn Ascot Avenue Beechwood Brook Vale Castlefields Greenway Road Halton Brook Halton Lodge Halton Road Halton View Road Halton Village Langdale Road Murdishaw Centre Palacefields Picton Avenue Preston Brook Russell Road The Grange way Windmill Hill	Widnes Alexander Drive Beechers Cronton Lane Ditchfield Road Farnworth Hale Bank Hale Road Halton View Road Langdale Road Liverpool Road Moorfield Road Queens Avenue Warrington Road West Bank Hale Hale Parade Ivy Farm Court, Hale				
MAIN MODIFICATION MM10	Policy wording	New retail or other town centre uses should be located within or on the edge of a defined Primary Shopping Area or local centre, appropriate to the scale of the proposal. Retail and leisure proposals in excess of 2,000 sqm (gross) floorspace not located	To add clarity and address the comments made by GL Hearn on behalf of NewRiver Capital. <i>N.B. Incorporates submission minor change</i>		

		within a defined Primary Shopping Area Town or District Centre , or allocated in the LDF a Local Plan will be subject to sequential and impact assessments. Retail and leisure proposals in excess of 200 sqm (gross) not within or adjacent to a defined centre, or allocated in the LDF a Local Plan will be subject to sequential assessment.	SM3 (above)
Minor post submission change MC5	Policy wording	The Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD will set out the following;	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC6	Policy wording	The Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD will identify areas for future retail development in line with the capacity identified in the Retail and Leisure Study 2009 ¹¹ or as updated.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC7	8.3	Widnes Town Centre comprises the Green Oaks Centre, Albert Square and the newly opened Widnes Shopping Park (phase 1) arranged off the pedestrianised core of Albert Road / Widnes Road. To the south lies Asda (Simms Cross) and the largely vacant Ashley Way Retail Park which is the subject of redevelopment proposals ¹² . The Council's main administrative headquarters are located to the south west adjacent to Riverside College (Kingsway Campus, Widnes) (Runcorn Campus) and other civic and leisure functions. Tightly constrained by surrounding residential uses to the north and west, and predominately single or two storeys, the centre contains very little in the way of office or commercial leisure space.	Amendment to correct error. N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SM5 (above)
Minor post submission change MC8	8.3	Retail warehousing (bulky goods) provision has been focused on the Ashley Way Retail Park but this site has lost its main anchor (B&Q) to a site on Widnes Waterfront and is now the subject of proposals for comprehensive redevelopment for a 12,000sqm foodstore. This will see the displacement of 6,000sqm of existing floorspace, which together with projected capacity suggests the Core Strategy and subsequent Local Plans DPDs will need to make provision for up to 19,000sqm of new bulky goods provision. The Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD and Widnes Town Centre SPD will help guide future development of the centre.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC9	8.11	Separated from its natural catchment areas by canals, rail and road infrastructure the centre Old Town struggled to maintain market share with residents choosing to shop at Halton Lea, in Widnes Town Centre or further afield.	Amendment to add clarity N.B. Includes submission minor change SM7
Minor post submission change	8.12	The Halton Retail and Leisure Study identifies capacity for up to 5,000sqm of mixed convenience / comparison floorspace to 2026, with the main need being to provide a	Amendment to reflect updated terminology

MC10		stronger convenience goods offer to attract additional footfall. The Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD and Runcorn Old Town SPD will help guide future development of the centre.	<i>N.B. Includes submission minor change SM8.</i>		
Minor post submission change MC11	8.13	The Site Allocations and Development Management Local Plan DPD will review the provision of local centres and set out policies to protect and enhance the strongest or most valuable centres, having regard, not just to retail, but to other uses including community services and facilities.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC12	New footnote	Except small scale rural offices of other small scale rural development (NPPF Para 25)	Additional footnote to clarify rural exceptions as set out in NPPF		
Minor post submission change MC13	8.17	In Runcorn however, the New Town land use model of peripheral employment areas, significant extant office permissions at East Runcorn with the opportunity to capitalise on existing research facilities to create a knowledge based science cluster, combined with the limited available land around the principal centres means that in Runcorn , peripheral office expansion is likely to be directed to Daresbury in accordance with CSI I: East Runcorn.	Minor grammatical corrections		
Minor post submission change MC14	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably para.s 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 154, 160 and 161) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably para.s 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 154, 160 and 161)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009) NPPF (Notably para.s 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 154, 160 and 161)				

CS6: GREEN BELT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording	A partial <u>strategic</u> Green Belt review may be necessary during the plan period to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of deliverable development land...	To be consistent with CS1 and CS3.
Submission Change SM2	9.5	... by encouraging the recycling of derelict land other urban land. main It further states...	Typing error.
Submission Change SM3	9.9	Emerging F findings indicate that in relation to housing land supply there is no need for a strategic review of Green Belt across the three districts comprising the LCR Eastern Housing Market Area (Halton, St Helens and Warrington), though a number of neighbouring authorities in the Northern Housing Market Area are embarking on reviews.	Updated to reflect finalised Liverpool City Region Overview Study
Submission Change SM4	9.11 - Footnote	⁶ HBC (2010) <u>Halton</u> Housing Topic Paper	To add full title of the Topic Paper.
Submission Change SM5	9.12	Runcorn has sufficient identified land to meet its anticipated housing needs, with the supply of land for employment purposes sufficient in the short term with redevelopment opportunities within existing protected employment areas expected to bolster long term supply.	Comma missing
Submission Change SM6	9.15	An assessment of windfall rates is contained within the ' <u>Halton</u> Housing Topic Paper' paper ⁹ . ⁹ HBC (2010) <u>Halton</u> Housing Topic Paper	To add full title and delete repetitive word.
Submission Change SM7	9.16	If the situation arises where it is apparent that an ongoing 5 year supply of development land from within the existing urban extents cannot be identified for the subsequent three years and alternative solutions are not forthcoming, a <u>strategic</u> Green Belt review will be triggered to inform the content of a subsequent Site Allocations DPD to ensure the future prosperity of the Borough and the wider sub-region. <u>Housing</u> Land supply information at 2010 suggests this may be necessary around 2015. <u>Employment land supply information at 2010 suggests that a 5 year supply can be demonstrated for the entirety of the plan period.</u>	Clarity and consistency with CS1. Clarifying that the land supply information referred to is in relation to housing Addition of comparable information for employment land supply situation.
Submission Change SM8	9.16	Land supply information <u>for residential development</u> at 2010 suggests this may be necessary around 2015.	To add clarity.

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM9	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, Updated 2001)	Consistency across Core Strategy where
Submission Change SM10	Policy Framework – Local Evidence	Housing and Economic Development Evidence Base Overview Study for Liverpool City Region Partners (GVA, 2010 2011)	Date of publication of final report.

MAIN MODIFICATION MM1	Policy wording	<p>The general extent of the Green Belt surrounding Halton, broadly following the line of the built up area as indicated on the Key Diagram, and as defined on the Proposals Map, will remain largely unchanged over the initial plan period. This is with the exception of the area to the east of Liverpool John Lennon Airport where an area of search is identified within which minor alterations will be considered as part of an Allocations DPD in accordance with CS17.</p> <p>A partial Green Belt review <u>may will</u> be necessary during the <u>early part of the</u> plan period to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of deliverable development land to meet the requirements of the Borough's separate communities as set out in CS1, CS3 and CS4. Any This review <u>is likely to will</u> be limited to meeting the identified needs of Widnes / Hale and would be undertaken in support of a subsequent Site Allocations DPD. The development of <u>with the release of land for any land released from the Green Belt will be phased towards the latter part of the plan period development strictly phased in accordance</u> with the prioritisation of urban <u>renewal regeneration</u> as set out in CS1. <u>In addition, an Area of Search is identified to the east of Liverpool John Lennon Airport within which minor alterations will be considered in accordance with policy CS17. Green Belt boundary changes will be defined in the subsequent Site Allocations DPD.</u></p> <p><u>The general extent of the Green Belt surrounding Runcorn, broadly following the line of the built up area as indicated on the Key Diagram, and as defined on the Halton UDP Proposals Map¹, will remain unchanged over the plan period.</u></p>	Text reordered to prioritise section on partial Green Belt Review ahead of other Green Belt matters.
			<p>Comment [GLH2]: ?? How should we reference? No mods to CS6 proposed in Jan when Insp saw previous schedule</p>

		<p>Small scale development amounting to minor infilling within the ‘washed over’² Green Belt settlements of Daresbury, Moore and Preston on the Hill may be permitted where it can be shown to be necessary to meet identified <u>specific</u> local needs.</p> <p>Insert Footnote: For the purposes of the Town and Country Planning (Local Planning)(England) Regulations 2012, at the date of adoption of this Core Strategy the ‘Halton UDP Proposals Map’ was the ‘Adopted Polices Map’</p> <p>Delete Footnote: ² CLG (2001) Planning Policy Guidance 2: Green Belts</p>	
Minor post submission change MCI	9.3	<p>Given that Widnes previously fell within the county of Lancashire, (with later changes designating surrounding authorities as the county of Merseyside) and Runcorn within Cheshire, Green Belt boundaries were first established through separate processes in different County Structure Plans. The current area of Green Belt around Widnes was set out in the Merseyside Structure Plan from 1979 and then the Merseyside Green Belt Local Plan (1983). In Cheshire, broad areas of Green Belt land were first designated as part of the 1979 Structure Plan. The extent of the Green Belt land was then embedded in the Halton Local Plan in 1996 and reconfirmed in the Unitary Development Plan of 2005.</p>	Deletion of superfluous paragraph.
Minor post submission change MC2	9.5	<p>National <u>planning p</u>Policy for Green Belts is set out in Planning Policy Guidance 2 (PPG2) which details their importance of Green Belts and how they can contribute to achieving sustainable development. It identifies five purposes for including land in the Green Belt;</p>	Minor wording change to remove direct reference to PPG2.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.5	<p>Additional last sentence: The proposed Green Belt Review will have full regard to these principles.</p>	Additional text specifying the criteria to be employed in any future Green Belt Review.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.9 - 9.11	<p>9.9 In 2010, a study was undertaken across the Liverpool City Region (LCR) in respect of cross-boundary employment and housing land development issues.⁴ The aim of the study was to determine if there were land supply issues in individual authorities, and whether unmet development needs of one area could reasonably be met within the urban extents of other authorities within the sub-region, avoiding the need for a strategic review of the Green Belt. Emerging findings indicate that in relation to housing land supply there is no need for a strategic review of Green Belt across the three districts comprising the LCR Eastern Housing Market Area (Halton, St Helens and Warrington), though a number of neighbouring authorities in the Northern Housing Market Area are embarking on reviews. In relation to employment land</p>	<p>Paragraphs now superseded following the Examination into the Core Strategy.</p> <p>N.B.Supersedes submission minor changes SM3 and SM4 (above)</p>

		<p>supply, whilst the study found there to be a potential shortfall in Halton's supply in the medium to long term (to 2031), this did not take into account the remodelling and regeneration opportunities highlighted through the JELP Study⁵ and referred to in CS4. If these sites are taken into account, the study recognised there is a much more balanced position in the longer term.</p> <p>9.10 The study considered land supply within local authorities as a whole and did not look at the adequacy of supply to meet future needs in separate communities within an individual authority's area.</p> <p>9.11 The land supply position as detailed in CSI: Halton's Spatial Strategy and in the evidence base accompanying the Core Strategy⁶ indicate that overall Halton has an adequate supply of land to meet anticipated development needs over the plan period for both housing and employment purposes, however, this assessment of the whole Borough masks a mismatch in supply north and south of the river.</p>	
<p>MAIN MODIFICATION MM-</p>	<p>9.9 and 9.10</p>	<p>Potential Need for Green Belt Review</p> <p><u>9.9 The housing policy figure for Halton as set out in CSI and CS3 conforms with Policy L4 of the Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) for the North West which required that Halton plan to provide a minimum of 500 units (net dwelling gain) over the period from 2003 to 2021 and for any period after until such time as the policy is reviewed. As highlighted in policy CS1, the Government has indicated its intention to abolish Regional Strategies, however, until such time as RSS for the North West is legally revoked, it remains part of the Development Plan and the Halton Core Strategy must be in general conformity with its provisions.</u></p> <p><u>9.10 Analysis of the identified supply of deliverable and developable land for residential development (at 2010)⁷ suggests that the total, whilst sufficient to meet the RSS housing requirement 'rolled forward' seven years to cover the Core Strategy plan period to 2028, has little margin or flexibility to cope with increased demolitions or projected supply not coming forward as anticipated.</u></p> <p><u>Insert Footnote</u> ⁷ HBC (2010) Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment 2010</p>	<p>New paragraphs setting the context (in terms of housing land supply) for the Green Belt Review</p>

MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.12	<p>Runcorn has sufficient identified land to meet its anticipated housing needs, with the supply of land for employment purposes sufficient in the short term with regeneration / redevelopment opportunities within existing protected employment areas expected to bolster long term supply and as such the previous Green Belt boundaries are reconfirmed.</p>	<p>Additional clarification that planned Green Belt Review will not concern Runcorn.</p> <p>N.B.Incorporates submission minor change SM5 (above)</p>
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.13 - 9.16	<p>9.13 Widnes / Hale have sufficient identified land (at 2010) to meet their anticipated housing development needs⁷ in the period up to 2022⁸ with a potential shortfall of supply of around 600 units to 2028, (see Appendix I; Monitor Line Chart) with land for employment purposes sufficient in terms of overall supply for the plan period but limited in terms of range and quality. These limitations in the range of employment sites available within Widnes together with potential contamination issues limit the scope to reallocate employment land for residential purposes. Therefore at 2010, Widnes / Hale had a potential shortage of identified land for residential development in the region of around 20 Ha. (i.e. 600 units delivered at a density of 30 dph).</p> <p>9.14 The Core Strategy seeks to ensure a sufficient ongoing supply of development land to meet the needs of Halton’s individual communities. Policies CS3 and CS4 define ‘sufficient’ supply as equating to 5 years at the prevailing policy target(s). Analysis of the position in 2010 showed that Widnes / Hale are forecast to be able to demonstrate a 5 year supply for residential development in each year until 2018 based on current build rates. Runcorn is forecast to have in excess of a 5 year supply for residential development throughout the plan period.</p> <p>9.15 Changes to build rate assumptions (reviewed annually) and new, previously unidentified or unavailable ‘windfall’ sites have the potential to boost supply, possibly addressing the minor shortfall at 2010, negating the need for specific policy intervention including Green Belt review. An assessment of windfall rates is contained within the ‘Halton Housing Topic Paper’ paper.¹⁸</p> <p>9.16 The land supply and demand situation across Halton’s communities will be kept under regular review with annual monitoring to ensure a continuing 5 year supply of developable land in line with Policies CS3 and CS4. If the situation arises where it is apparent that an ongoing 5 year supply of development land from within the existing</p>	<p>Paragraphs now superseded following the Examination into the Core Strategy.</p> <p>N.B.Supersedes submission minor changes SM6, SM7 and SM8</p>

		urban extents cannot be identified for the subsequent three years and alternative solutions are not forthcoming, a strategic Green Belt review will be triggered to inform the content of a subsequent Site Allocations DPD to ensure the future prosperity of the Borough and the wider sub-region. Housing Lland supply information at 2010 suggests this may be necessary around 2015. Employment land supply information at 2010 suggests that a 5-year supply can be demonstrated for the entirety of the plan period.					
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.13	<u>Housing supply is constrained in Widnes / Hale, with the likelihood that the identified supply (at 2010) will not be sufficient to meet the defined policy requirement throughout the full plan period. The Examination into this Plan concluded that this constituted the exceptional circumstances, as required to be demonstrated by the National Planning Policy Framework, to warrant an early partial review of the Halton Green Belt around these settlements.</u>	New paragraph setting out why a Green Belt Review is required and updated reference to national guidance in the NPPF.				
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	9.17	PPG2 National planning policy states that Green Belt boundaries should have a degree of permanence and should endure beyond the timeframe of normal development plans. As such, any the planned review of Green Belt boundaries around Widnes / Hale as may be necessary during the early part of the life of this Core Strategy plan period would need to look beyond 2028, addressing not only any known shortfall in development land to 2028 but also taking into account foreseeable development requirements beyond this period, and ensuring that the boundaries will last and will not come under undue pressure. As such, it is not possible at this time to identify the total quantum of land potentially affected by any review as this will be influenced by the degree of any shortfall and the timing of the review.	Updated reference to national guidance. Wording amendments to confirm that a review of the Green Belt boundaries of Widnes/Hale will take place during the early part of the plan period.				
Minor post submission change MC3	9.18	Any It is intended that the review will be conducted in consultation partnership with neighbouring authorities, particularly St Helens, Warrington, Liverpool and Knowsley to ensure that <u>as far as can be achieved</u> , a coordinated and strategic approach is taken.	Minor change to clarify the approach that will be taken for the Green Belt Review.				
Minor post submission change MC4	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, Updated 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 17, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 92, 111, 112, 151)</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, Updated 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 17, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 92, 111, 112, 151)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background		
National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, Updated 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 17, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 90, 92, 111, 112, 151)						
MAIN MODIFICATION MM-	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Policy Framework</td> <td>CS6 Green Belt</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Objectives</td> <td>I – Cultural Heritage</td> </tr> </table>	Policy Framework	CS6 Green Belt	SA Objectives	I – Cultural Heritage	Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.
Policy Framework	CS6 Green Belt						
SA Objectives	I – Cultural Heritage						

		2 – Biodiversity	
		7 – Land Quality	
		10 – Housing	
		14 – Economy	
	SA Outcome	<p>Overall, this policy highlights the importance of protecting Green Belt land over the plan period. This will have a positive impact on the relevant SA objectives.</p> <p><u>However, policies CS1, CS3 and CS6 (Green Belt) all set out that there will be a requirement to undertake an early partial review of the Green Belt around Widnes and Hale. This indicates that there will potentially be a need for new development on Green Belt land over the plan period within Halton.</u></p> <p><u>This could potentially have a significant negative impact on SA objectives related to protecting environmental assets.</u></p>	

Executive

CS7: INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISION

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	10.2	○ digital infrastructure such as internet- supply access	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM2	10.4	In such instances, the contribution towards infrastructure provision will <u>may</u> be re-examined.	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM3	10.7 - Footnote 4	CLG (2011 0) Community Infrastructure Levy – An overview (May 2011) www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1772940.pdf http://www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1897278.pdf	Updated CLG Community Infrastructure guidance note.
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording (last sentence)	The details of such an approach will be set out in appropriate LDF <u>Local Development documents</u> .	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC2	10.5	It has therefore been agreed with the Highways Agency that the impact on the transport network (and particularly the M56 and M62) of the development sites being promoted through the LDF Halton's development plan will be assessed, both individually and cumulatively, during the development of any Site Allocations DPD : <u>Local Plan</u> .	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC3	10.6	The Infrastructure Plan will be a 'live' document which will be updated as required over the lifetime of the Core Strategy as new Development Plan Documents <u>Local Plan documents</u> emerge, infrastructure schemes are completed and in accordance with discussions with infrastructure / service providers to further review the need for infrastructure within the Borough.	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
Minor post submission change MC4	10.7	Halton Borough Council's approach to such arrangements will be set out in greater detail through appropriate <u>local development</u> documents within the LDF which could include the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD <u>Local Plan</u> or Developer Contributions SPD.	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
Minor post submission change MC5	Footnote 1	CLG (2010 2011) Community Infrastructure Levy – An overview (May 2011) www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1772940.pdf www.communities.gov.uk/documents/planningandbuilding/pdf/1897278.pdf	Updated reference to newer guidance

Minor post submission change MC6	Policy Framework	National Policy	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
		<p> PPS12: Local Spatial Planning (CLG, 2008); NPPF (Principally para.s 34, 157 and 162) Community Infrastructure Levy Regulations (Amendment) 2011 (CLG, 2011) </p>	

Executive Board Draft

SECTION DIVIDER

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Minor post submission change MCI		<p style="text-align: center;">Halton Borough Council</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Core Strategy</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Revised Proposed <u>Post Submission Changes</u> Document</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Key Areas of Change</p>	Updated document title

Executive Board Draft

CS8: 3MG

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording (Principles of Development)	Principles of development <u>Development across 3MG will be expected to:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Protecting the amenity of residents in the adjoining areas of Ditton and Halebank 	To be consistent to with other Key Area of Change policies.
Submission Change SM2	11.2	The site has been recognised as a Regional Site for employment purposes since the Regional Economic Strategy in 2006 2003.	In response to representations received (NWDA – S015/00002/004)
Submission Change SM3	Figure 8	Add location of Ditton station. Amend Mersey Gateway Project Area. Amend Queensway A553 A533.	Updates and factual amendments.
Submission Change SM4	Policy Framework – Local Evidence	3MG Masterplan (Atkins, 2005); 3MG SPD (HBC, 2009)	Additional information.

Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording – first bullet	The availability of approximately 90ha 103ha of land for B8 employment development within the 3MG site to deliver regionally important logistics and distribution development and the provision of jobs for the people of Halton.	Consequential change following increase in Employment Land requirement to 313ha (Main Modification MM2).
Minor post submission change MC2	Figure 8	Correct A553 to A533 on Queensway approach to Silver Jubilee Bridge	Factual correction
Minor post submission change MC3	11.2	¹ NWDA (2009) Strategic Regional Sites (www.nwda.co.uk/news--events/press-releases/200901/strategic-regional-sites.aspx)	New footnote to add clarity
Minor post submission change MC4	11.3	Up to this time 2012, development has been concentrated around the eastern portion of the site close to the A533/Queensway.	Wording amendment to prevent document becoming less legible over time.
Minor post submission change	11.5	As such, one of the criteria of the policy is to improve connections to nearby freight facilities, namely such as the Mersey Gateway Port (Weston Docks) and there are also	Wording amendment to better reflect the more encompassing wording within

MC5		potential future synergies with Liverpool John Lennon Airport.	the policy.				
Minor post submission change MC6	11.6	Aside from the potential specific alteration of the Green Belt which would be required to facilitate the expansion of Liverpool John Lennon Airport as included in Policy CS17, it is important that the a strategic gap between development at 3MG / Halebank and the nearest built up areas of Halewood and Speke in neighbouring authorities is maintained and that the amenity of the Green Belt designation is upheld.	Wording amendment to aid clarity and avoid prejudging the outcome of the future Green Belt Review, i.e. reference is to retaining a gap rather than the gap as defined in the previous plan.				
Minor post submission change MC7	11.8	An adopted Supplementary Planning Document (SPD) exists for the 3MG site, based on the policy within Halton's Unitary Development Plan. This SPD will need to be updated reviewed to reflect the revised policy framework given through CS8.	Minor wording amendment.				
Minor post submission change MC8	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995, amended in 2001); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Local Evidence</td> <td>Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (BE Group, 2010); 3MG Masterplan (Atkins, 2005); 3MG SPD (HBC, 2009)</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995, amended in 2001); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35)	Local Evidence	Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (BE Group, 2010); 3MG Masterplan (Atkins, 2005); 3MG SPD (HBC, 2009)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background Additional detail for clarity
National Policy	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995, amended in 2001); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35)						
Local Evidence	Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (BE Group, 2010); 3MG Masterplan (Atkins, 2005); 3MG SPD (HBC, 2009)						

CS9: SOUTH WIDNES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording (f)	...the delivery of a new neighbourhood-local centre appropriate to the needs of the local community.	To be consistent with CS5.
Submission Change SM2	Figure 9	Add Local Gateway onto Queensway / Waterloo Road junction	Inclusion of additional Local Gateway at Queensway / Waterloo Road.
Submission Change SM3	12.7	In accordance with CS5: A Network of Centres the potential for a new mixed use neighbourhood-local centre in West Bank	To be consistent with CS5.
Submission Change SM4	12.8	Other opportunities to improve the area's physical linkages should be taken where necessary appropriate and in accordance with existing Masterplans and SPDs through the development of 'Local Gateways'.	Grammatical correction and wording amendment.
Submission Change SM5	Footnote 1	BE Group, HBC, et al (2010) Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (JELPS)	To ensure title of report is consistent across the Core Strategy
Submission Change SM6	12.8	One such opportunity to forge a Local Gateway is the link between West Bank and Widnes Waterfront adjacent to the St Helens Canal. This Local Gateway would have the potential to support and connect recreational, leisure and employment opportunities across the Key Area of Change. <u>A Local Gateway should also be forged at the link between Queensway and Waterloo Road to improve connectivity and accessibility across West Bank.</u> Other Local Gateways may include the links and connections between <u>the</u> Town Centre and the surrounding residential areas.	Inclusion of additional Local Gateway at Queensway / Waterloo Road. Typo.
Submission Change SM7	12.9	particularly from Widnes Town Centre, increasing the area's informal leisure offer.	Grammatical correction
Submission Change SM8	12.13	The future development and regeneration of the West Bank area will be supported by an SPD for the area. This <u>will</u> draws heavily on the Mersey Gateway Regeneration Strategy...	To change tense.
Submission Change SM9	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010-2011); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3. Bracket missing.
Minor post submission change	Policy wording	a) Making available 30 54 hectares of employment land and redeveloping and regenerating existing employment areas across South Widnes with an emphasis on mixed employment	Consequential change following increase in Employment Land

MCI		uses in Widnes Waterfront and West Bank.	requirement to 313ha (Main Modification MM2).
MAIN MODIFICATION MM11	Policy wording	<p>b) Directing up to about 25,300 sqm (gross) of convenience / comparison retail provision to <u>Widnes Town Centre in accordance with Policy CS5</u>. the main retail area (Widnes Town Centre Boundary) with small scale provision across the wider area.</p> <p>c) Directing up to about 19,000 sqm (gross) of retail warehousing <u>provision to Widnes Town Centre in accordance with Policy CS5</u>. across South Widnes with a particular focus on the main retail area within the Widnes Town Centre Boundary.</p> <p>d) Focusing new leisure facilities <u>into</u> Widnes Town Centre in accordance with Policy CS5, with <u>an particular</u> emphasis on the enhancement of the evening economy in the Victoria Square area, and complementary leisure uses in Widnes Waterfront.</p>	To add clarity and address the comments made by GL Hearn on behalf of NewRiver Capital.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM12	Policy wording	Changes to Figure 9 – South Widnes Diagram: Delete Main Retail Area from diagram and key. Add hashed area to the diagram showing Widnes Town Centre Boundary (as per Proposed Submission Document, Nov 2010) and add to key ' <u>Indicative Widnes Town Centre Boundary (as confirmed in Appendix 2)</u> '.	To add clarity and address the comments made by GL Hearn on behalf of NewRiver Capital.

Execu

<p>Minor post submission change MC2</p>	<p>Para 12.4 Footnote</p>	<p>BE Group, HBC, et al (2010) Joint Employment Land and Premises Study (JELPS)</p>	<p>Minor detail correction</p>
<p>Minor post</p>	<p>Para 12.4</p>	<p>CLG (201209) National Planning Policy Framework Statement 4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth</p>	<p>Amendments to reference updated</p>

submission change MC3	Footnote		national policy background
MAIN MODIFICATION MMI3	12.5	Widnes is the largest town centre within the Borough and has the greatest retail offer in terms of range and floorspace. Widnes Town Centre's retail role will be maintained and enhanced, in accordance with CS5: A Network of Centres, prioritising new retail opportunities and improvements within the Town Centre Boundary . This will include the potential to enhance or redevelop the Albert Square Shopping Centre. Leisure facilities will <u>also</u> be focused on <u>Widnes Town Centre in accordance with CS5: A Network of Centres</u> , with Victoria Square remaining as the focus for evening entertainment given the attractive public realm and heritage assets in the locality. The Venture Fields site on the Widnes Waterfront will provide complementary leisure facilities for the South Widnes area.	To add clarity and address the comments made by GL Hearn on behalf of NewRiver Capital.
Minor post submission change MC4	12.7	In accordance with CS5: A Network of Centres the potential for a new mixed use neighbourhood local centre in West Bank has been identified to provide for the needs of the local population.	Correction to conform with terminology in CS5.
Minor post submission change MC5	12.8	Other opportunities to improve the area's physical linkages should be taken where necessary <u>appropriate</u> and in accordance with existing Masterplans and SPDs through the development of 'Local Gateways'. Local Gateways will play a significant role in ensuring localised legibility and to aid connectivity of the outlying areas. One such opportunity to forge a Local Gateway is the link between West Bank and Widnes Waterfront adjacent to the St Helens Canal. This Local Gateway would have the potential to support and connect recreational, leisure and employment opportunities across the Key Area of Change. <u>A Local Gateway should also be forged at the link between Queensway and Waterloo Road to improve connectivity and accessibility across West Bank</u> . Other Local Gateways may include the links and connections between <u>the</u> Town Centre and the surrounding residential areas.	Minor corrections to add additional detail.
Minor post submission change MC6	12.11	Potential risk as a result of flooding and pollution also exists in certain locations across the area. CS23: Managing Pollution and Risk and other LDF <u>Local Development Document</u> policies containing guidance associated with contamination, flooding and pollution are therefore particularly applicable to this Key Area of Change and should be fully considered by future development proposals.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC7		The future development and regeneration of the West Bank area will be supported by an SPD for the area. This <u>will</u> draws heavily on the Mersey Gateway Regeneration Strategy ²⁰ which is integral to the delivery of the Mersey Gateway Project.	Minor grammatical correction.

Minor post submission change MC8	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td> National Policy </td> <td> PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009; PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009; PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009; PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156)				

Executive Board Draft

CS10: WEST RUNCORN

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	13.1	...which will deliver high quality and accessible environments utilising the area's waterfront assets...	Apostrophe missing.
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording Point (a)	Improving Runcorn Old Town's retail offer, focusing up to about 5,200sqm (gross) of convenience / comparison goods retailing to the main retail area within the Town <u>District</u> Centre Boundary and supporting its role as a District Centre and a cultural and leisure destination.	To be in accordance with Appendix 2.
Submission Change SM3	Policy wording Point (d)	Supporting the comprehensive redevelopment of Runcorn Waterfront to be a residential led, mixed use regeneration initiative <u>incorporating the delivery of a new Local Centre</u> , with detailed guidance, land allocations, access arrangements and capacity to be determined.	To be in accordance with CS5
Submission Change SM4	13.7	As such the current 2010 Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment only includes a yield of 1,330 units in the period to 2028.	To clarify the current position.
Submission Change SM5	13.10	...and as such new office development activity in Runcorn is largely directed to <u>the</u> Daresbury <u>Strategic Site</u> in East Runcorn (CS11).	In response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/00004/002)
Submission Change SM6	13.15	In the achievement of sustainable design and construction, proposals will additionally need to ensure the protection of water quality of the area's waterways in accordance with CS23: Managing Pollution and Risk.	Apostrophe missing.
Submission Change SM7	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010-2011)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3.

MAIN MODIFICATION MMI4	Policy wording	a) Improving Runcorn Old Town's retail offer, f ocusing up to about 5,200sqm (gross) of convenience / comparison goods retailing to <u>Runcorn Old Town District Centre in accordance with Policy CS5</u> , the main retail area within the Town Centre Boundary and improving the retail offer and supporting its role as a District Centre and a cultural and leisure destination.	Consequential changes needed to ensure consistency across the Key Areas of Change as a result of the changes required to CS9. Supersedes minor submission change SM2 above
MAIN MODIFICATION	Policy wording	b) The delivery of 1,500 dwellings across West Runcorn with a particular emphasis on the Runcorn Waterfront site to accommodate 1,330-1,360	Amendment to error from 2010 Strategic Housing Land Availability

MM15		dwellings, with the potential for additional residential development, subject to appropriate access.	Assessment.
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	c) The delivery of 2726 hectares of employment land and the redevelopment and regeneration of existing employment areas across West Runcorn with a focus on the Mersey Gateway Port and the development of an employment area in the southern part of Runcorn Waterfront.	Consequential change following increase in Employment Land requirement to 313ha (Main Modification MM2).
MAIN MODIFICATION MM16	Policy wording	Changes to Figure 10 – West Runcorn Diagram: Delete Main Retail Area from diagram and key. Add hashed area to the diagram showing Runcorn Old Town District Centre Boundary (as per Proposed Submission Document, Nov 2010) and add to key ' Indicative Runcorn Old Town District Centre Boundary (as confirmed in Appendix 2) '.	Consequential changes needed to ensure consistency across the Key Areas of Change as a result of the changes required to CS9.

Executive Board

<p>Minor post submission change MC2</p>	<p>13.5</p>	<p>The Old Town's role within its localised catchment will be protected and enhanced wherever possible and opportunities for additional convenience and comparison provision should be identified and promoted, where appropriate, in accordance with CS5: A Network of Centres. Future retail provision will be allocated within the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan.</p>	<p>Amendment to reflect updated terminology</p>
<p>Minor post submission change MC3</p>	<p>13.7</p>	<p>The full delivery of the residential redevelopment of Runcorn Waterfront, however, will be dependent upon securing adequate site access and will be established through masterplanning, the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan and the development of a Runcorn Waterfront SPD. As such the current 2010</p>	<p>Amendment to reflect updated terminology Housing capacity updated in line with</p>

		Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment ² only includes a yield of +330 <u>1,360</u> units in the period to 2028.	policy text (Main Change MM15 above)						
Minor post submission change MC4	13.11	This has the potential to create a second Cheshire Canal Ring further encouraging and supporting the leisure and recreational potential of the Bridgewater Canal. The route of the alignment will be protected through the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD <u>Local Plan</u>	Amendment to reflect updated terminology						
Minor post submission change MC5	13.16	This will be translated into the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD <u>Local Plan</u> and the Runcorn Waterfront SPD. Proposals for Runcorn Old Town, including those associated with the Canal Quarter will be supported by a SPD. This SPD will also aim to build upon the measures proposed in the Mersey Gateway Regeneration Strategy ⁷ including those associated with the Silver Jubilee Bridge. More detailed policies and the allocation of sites for the delivery of this Key Area of Change (including the Mersey Gateway Port) will be included within the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD <u>Local Plan</u> .	Amendment to reflect updated terminology						
Minor post submission change MC6	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background				
National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001) NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 23, 32, 56, 57, 109, 111 and 156)								
MAIN MODIFICATION MM14a	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Policy Framework</td> <td>CS10 West Runcorn</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Objectives</td> <td> 3 – Water 6 – Energy Efficiency 7 – Land Quality 10 – Housing 11 – Accessibility 14 – Economy 16 – Town Centres </td> </tr> <tr> <td>SA Outcome</td> <td>The focus of this policy is bringing large areas of previously developed land back into beneficial use. Development will be designed with sustainability in mind. This policy will contribute</td> </tr> </table>	Policy Framework	CS10 West Runcorn	SA Objectives	3 – Water 6 – Energy Efficiency 7 – Land Quality 10 – Housing 11 – Accessibility 14 – Economy 16 – Town Centres	SA Outcome	The focus of this policy is bringing large areas of previously developed land back into beneficial use. Development will be designed with sustainability in mind. This policy will contribute	Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.
Policy Framework	CS10 West Runcorn								
SA Objectives	3 – Water 6 – Energy Efficiency 7 – Land Quality 10 – Housing 11 – Accessibility 14 – Economy 16 – Town Centres								
SA Outcome	The focus of this policy is bringing large areas of previously developed land back into beneficial use. Development will be designed with sustainability in mind. This policy will contribute								

		positively to sustainability principles. However, development in the area could potentially have a negative impact on water quality.	
--	--	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--

Executive Board Draft

CS1 I: EAST RUNCORN

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	14.1	Whilst the whole of the East Runcorn area constitutes a Key Area of Change within the Core Strategy, the Daresbury <u>portion</u> is allocated as a Strategic Site.	To add clarity as to the extent of the Strategic Site.
Submission Change SM2	14.1	Under the provisions of PPS12 ^{INSERT FOOTNOTE} ¹ CLG (2008) Planning Policy Statement 12: Local Spatial Planning, paragraphs 4.6-4.7	To add reference to PPS12
Submission Change SM3	Figure 11	Amend label on diagram: Daresbury <u>Strategic Site</u>	To add clarity to the figure as to the areas referred to in the policy and in response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/00004/002)
Submission Change SM4	Policy wording Part a)	26ha of land will be made available to aid the expansion of the BI science, high tech and research development...	Typo
Submission Change SM5	Policy wording Part c) Second bullet	Phase 2 – 600 dwellings in the central area <u>known as the Central Housing Area</u> between the Daresbury SIC and Daresbury Park	To add clarity to the policy and to align with the other bullet points and Figure 12
Submission Change SM6	Policy wording Part d)	A mixed use neighbourhood local centre including a marina providing mooring for inland waterways craft sited alongside the Bridgewater Canal around the existing George Gleave's bridge. Any such provision of a neighbourhood local centre should avoid unacceptable impact on the vitality and viability of existing centres and the planned neighbourhood local centre at Sandymoor.	To be consistent with CS5.
Submission Change SM7	Policy wording Part d) Final sentence	Individual retail units should not exceed 280 SqM <u>sqm net</u> in size.	To ensure policy CS1 I is consistent with policy CS5 with regard to maximum floorspace for units in local centres.
Submission Change SM8	Policy wording (General Principles of Development)	General P principles of D development <u>Development across Daresbury Strategic Site will be expected to:</u>	To be consistent to with other Key Area of Change policies.
Submission Change SM9	Policy wording (General	1. A network of open spaces for nature conservation and recreation should be provided, including the retention of Daresbury Firs, <u>enhancements to Keckwick</u>	In response to representations received (Environment Agency –

	principles of development – 1)	Brook corridor , the creation of a linear country park along the Bridgewater canal corridor, formal green space to serve the residential area and smaller green spaces integral to individual developments.	S012/00002/002)
Submission Change SM10	Policy wording (General Principles of Development – 1)	A network of open spaces for nature conservation and recreation should be provided, including the retention conservation of Daresbury Firs, the creation of a linear country park along the Bridgewater canal corridor, formal greenspace to serve the residential areas and smaller green spaces integral to individual development.	Wording amend in line with para 14.13. Typo.
Submission Change SM11	Policy wording (General principles of development – 1)	A network of open spaces for nature conservation and recreation totalling over 40 hectares should be provided...	In response to representations received (Natural England – S075/00006/019)
Submission Change SM12	Policy wording (General principles of development – 3)	The public transport network at the site should include the provision of a transport interchange facility sited to maintain the long term aim of delivering a railway station. in the long term.	Delete repetition.
Submission Change SM13	Policy wording Sandymoor	...in line with outstanding consents including a new neighbourhood local centre, primary school...	To be consistent with CS5.
Submission Change SM14	14.2, second sentence	The undeveloped remainder of the Sandymoor area, along with land to the west of Daresbury village, represents some of the remaining major greenfield sites in Halton outside of the Green Belt .	To add clarity to the justification.
Submission Change SM15	14.3, final sentence	The outstanding infrastructure requirements have been translated into the Infrastructure Plan accompanying the Core Strategy , along with an indication of the bodies responsible for delivery and likely development costs.	To add clarity to the justification.
Submission Change SM16	14.5, second sentence	Stakeholders, landowners and potential developers in the area worked collaboratively to produce a strategic vision and comprehensive Master Plan known as the Daresbury Framework for the Daresbury area, based around the notion of connecting the separate knowledge nuclei of the business and science facilities.	To introduce the document which is then referred to at para 14.7

Submission Change SM17	14.5, final sentence	The Master Plan forecast a 30-40 year delivery period for the realisation of the proposed development, driven by the pace of expansion at Daresbury SIC which is predominantly determined by the availability of funding <u>and demand</u> .	To highlight that the economic market will be a prime determinant of the pace of development.
Submission Change SM18	Table 4	See below this table	Oversight when plan period was extended to 2028 that this table was updated. Title amend to align with para 14.6.
Submission Change SM19	14.8, First sentence	In order to achieve the desired aims for the Daresbury <u>Strategic Site</u> , partnership working will need to continue over the lifetime of the plan and beyond.	In response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/00004/002)
Submission Change SM20	14.8, Fourth sentence	The newly formed Local Enterprise Partnership for the Liverpool City Region, <u>ERDF, JESSICA and Regional Growth Fund funding</u> and the emerging Technology and Innovation Centre network are all possible funding opportunities which will need to be investigated to allow Daresbury SIC to reach its full potential.	To reflect the post up to date position as to how funding will be secured to bring forward development at DSIC.
Submission Change SM21	14.8, Insert new sentences after the above	<u>In August 2011, Daresbury Science and Innovation Campus was announced as an Enterprise Zone status ^{INSERT FOOTNOTE} to boost local growth and increase jobs. New businesses in the Zone will benefit from a 100% discount on business rates, and Tax Incremental Financing powers will be a further method available to secure the infrastructure required to develop the site. Additionally, it is intended that the Enterprise Zone will benefit from reduced planning control through the introduction of a Local Development Order to be developed by the Council for the Zone.</u> ⁵ CLG (2011) http://www.communities.gov.uk/news/newsroom/1967595	To reflect recent Government announcement
Submission Change SM22	14.8, Penultimate sentence	Government funding has already been earmarked for specific projects at the SIC, including the Hartree Centre for Computational Science and Engineering and the Science and Technology Facilities Council are committed to assisting the delivery of major public sector science programmes <u>at the campus</u> .	To add clarity.
Submission Change SM23	14.9, Fourth sentence	The already consented floorspace, coupled with information taken from a survey of businesses which indicates that there is little demand from within the office sector to locate in the Borough's town centre locations, particularly Runcorn Old Town ⁵ .	Typo.
Submission Change SM24	14.9, Penultimate sentence	To date, Daresbury Park has proved to be a popular location for office development given the high quality environment within which it is set, the bespoke buildings offered with large floorplates, able to accommodate Head Quarter <u>headquarter</u> type buildings.	Typo.

Submission Change SM25	14.10	...and this has been translated <u>into</u> the phasing of employment development included in Table 4 above in order to provide the most realistic picture of future development.	Typo
Submission Change SM26	Footnote 6	Mott MacDonald (2010 1) East Runcorn Sustainable Transport Study	Date of publication of ERSTS is 2011, not 2010.
Submission Change SM27	14.11, Eighth sentence	However, this route broadly illustrates the preferred alignment of the main vehicular road, indicating that it will be the key internal route <u>at Daresbury Strategic Site in the area</u> , and will be required to link the A56, the Central Housing Area, Daresbury SIC and connect to the A558.	To add clarity.
Submission Change SM28	14.12, Penultimate sentence	Renewable energy infrastructure requirements cannot be quantified at this stage but the identification of Daresbury as an Energy Priority Zone ⁷ in CS19: Sustainable Development and Climate Change suggests that the potential for <u>decentralised integrating renewables and low carbon</u> technologies should be pursued to boost the long term sustainability of the site.	To clarify the opportunities which have been identified for the Daresbury Energy Priority Zone.
Submission Change SM29	14.13, Second sentence	Of particular note in the area are the Red Brow Cutting <u>Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI)</u> and the Daresbury Firs Local Nature Reserve which will need to be conserved to retain their geological and biodiversity importance, respectively.	To define the acronym used.
Submission Change SM30	14.14, First sentence	The provision of a public transport interchange at the intersection of the two railway lines which run through the site <u>will improve the area's connectivity via sustainable transport</u> .	To improve readability of paragraph.
Submission Change SM31	14.14, Final sentence	In the circumstance where there is clear evidence to suggest that a railway station cannot be delivered or it can be proven that the entirety of the safeguarded land is not needed for public transport facilities, the applicable land will be considered for <u>residential development the corresponding land uses shown on Figure 12</u> .	To update the text given changes made to Figure 12 at the Revised Proposed Submission stage.
Submission Change SM32	Footnote 9	⁹ The Bridgewater Way Initiative is led by the Bridgewater Canal Trust who wish to maximise the potential of the Bridgewater Canal as an integrated shared strategic cycle and pedestrian network, through the implementation of the Bridgewater Way Initiative which seeks to implement improvements to existing routes and public transport facilities in <u>it's the</u> vicinity of the Bridgewater Canal.	Typo.
Submission Change SM33	14.15, Final sentence	The provision of a <u>neighbourhood local</u> centre is included in the policy to support the surrounding housing and employment areas. Retail and community facilities will be necessary to meet the day-to-day local needs of the residents and employees at East Runcorn. As the <u>neighbourhood local</u> centre falls within the Central Housing Area, it is expected that the developer of this wider area will deliver the units within the mixed use <u>neighbourhood local</u> centre, for occupation by service providers.	To be consistent with CS5.

Submission Change SM34	14.16, Third sentence	An SPD will also be produced for the area covering the Daresbury Strategic Site including the intervening areas.	Deletion of unnecessary wording.
Submission Change SM35	Table 6	Phase 1 – Delph Lane West No. of Dwellings: 500 350	To correct error made at Revised Proposed Submission stage.
Submission Change SM36	Table 6	Phase 3 – Central Area Delivery Mechanism for Improvements to existing Delph Lane canal bridge: Private developer bringing forward the Central Housing Area Development costs for spine road to be split between residential developer and DSIC Joint Venture	Arising from representation received (Redrow Homes – 01159/00002/007)
Submission Change SM37	Table 6	Phase 3 – Central Area Delivery Mechanism for Improvements at A56/Delph Lane junction: Private developer bringing forward the Central Housing Area Development costs for spine road to be split between residential developer and DSIC Joint Venture	In response to representation received (Redrow Homes – 01159/00002/007)
Submission Change SM38	Table 7	Phase 2 – Daresbury SIC Add new Infrastructure Requirement: Improvements at A56/Delph Lane junction	To correct mismatch between Table 6 and Table 7
Submission Change SM39	Table 8	Contributing development (first three rows): DSIC Joint Venture and C entral H ousing A area	To correct terminology used.
Submission Change SM40	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010-2011)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3.
Minor post submission change MCI	Figure 11	Amended diagram <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Daresbury Strategic Site label Addition of Sandymoor annotations from Figure 12 [To be inserted prior to public consultation]	To add further clarity
MAIN MODIFICATION MM29	Policy wording	3. The whole of the development should be served by public transport, to connect the employment, housing and retail/leisure areas. The public transport network at the site should include the provision of a transport interchange facilities sited to serve the	To reflect that the GRIP Study for Daresbury station is not being progressed by Network Rail, and as

		entirety of the site. maintaining the long term aim of delivering a railway station in the long term.	such it is highly unlikely that a station could be delivered at this location. <i>N.B. This also incorporates and supersedes Change 12 under policy CS11 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i>
Minor post submission change MC2	Figure 12	Amended diagram: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Removal of public transport interchange • Addition of Strategic Gateway at A56 • Removal of Sandymoor annotations to Figure 11 (as not part of Strategic Site allocations) • Replace Local Centre and Marina notations with symbols • Amend labels for land uses in the key <p>[To be inserted prior to public consultation]</p>	To add further clarity and to reflect the removal of future railway station from the policy
MAIN MODIFICATION MMI7	14.11	After the existing text which reads: “The study revealed that under a “Do Nothing” scenario (where no uncommitted development takes place), the M56 Junction 11 in 2015 is predicted to operate at capacity in both the AM and PM peak periods”, insert the following: <u>The Highways Agency are fully aware of the issues at this junction and the Council will continue to work with them and the developers involved in bringing forward the Strategic Site to consider the alternative funding options necessary to prioritise necessary improvements at this junction.</u>	To reflect that the capacity issues at junction 11 of the M56 are not insurmountable and that the Council will continue to work with the Highways Agency and the developers to ensure the safe operation of the junction is not compromised.
MAIN MODIFICATION MMI8	14.11	After the existing text which reads: “It will entail at least one additional canal crossing suitable for vehicles”, insert the following: <u>The proposed land uses immediately adjacent to the indicative line of the main vehicular route as depicted on Figure 12 are therefore also subject to minor changes once the exact alignment is determined. The quantum and role of the area of greenspace south of the existing homes on Delph Lane close to the junction with the A56 should however remain.</u>	To clarify that the land uses immediately adjacent to the main vehicular route are also indicative and subject to change, in relation to the precise alignment of the main vehicular route. Also to give assurances that any alternative alignment of the main vehicular route would not compromise the green space south of Delph Lane.
MAIN	14.14	The provision of a public transport facilities interchange at within the intersection of	To reflect that the GRIP Study for

MODIFICATION 30		<p>the two railway lines which run through the Strategic Site will improve the area's connectivity via sustainable transport. It is envisaged that this will initially provide bus interchange facilities to serve the employment and residential areas, with bus services serving the local centre to ensure its viability. Bus provision should improve connections to the Strategic Site from surrounding residential areas and key transport nodes including Runcorn Old Town, Runcorn East station and Warrington town centre, with the aspiration of delivering a railway station to serve either one or both of the railway lines in the longer term. The precise location of a public transport interchange has not yet been determined but will be largely dependent on the outcome of the current Guide to Railway Investment Projects (GRIP) Study, which is being progressed by Network Rail on behalf of Halton Borough Council. Should this study find that the practicality and feasibility of a railway station at Daresbury is limited, a wider area will be available for a bus-based interchange. In the circumstance where there is clear evidence to suggest that a railway station cannot be delivered or it can be proven that the entirety of the safeguarded land is not needed for public transport facilities, the applicable land will be considered for the corresponding land uses shown on Figure 12.</p>					<p>Daresbury station is not being progressed by Network Rail, and as such it is highly unlikely that a station could be delivered at this location. Sustainable transport facilities will be bus based.</p> <p><i>N.B. This also incorporates and supersedes Changes 30 and 31 under policy CS11 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i></p>
MAIN MODIFICATION 31	Table 8	Row 1 Public Transport facilities Interchange – including bus interchange facilities with the potential for a new railway station	Within the Strategic Site, capable of serving the entire area At the intersection of two railway lines within Daresbury Strategic Site	Over the plan period	DSIC Joint Venture and central Central housing Housing area Area	Private residential developer and DSIC It is likely that public funding will be required to deliver this key piece of infrastructure	<p>To reflect that the GRIP Study for Daresbury station is not being progressed by Network Rail, and as such it is highly unlikely that a station could be delivered at this location.</p> <p><i>N.B. This also incorporates Change 39 under policy CS11 as proposed in the Schedule of Minor Changes document (Submission Document: CS4).</i></p>
MAIN MODIFICATION	Table 8	Rows 4 and 5 Further Junction 11 Over the All sites will Pooled developer					<p>To add further detail to the infrastructure requirements in Table 8</p>

MM19		improvements to Junction 11 of M56 in accordance with the ERSTS¹²	of M56	plan period	create pressure on junction 11 of the M56	contributions with potential for funding from the Highways Agency	of policy CSI 1 so that there is no ambiguity about which local road network schemes are referred to. Drafting errors regarding reference to A556 and to primary road network.
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	National Policy		PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); PPS4: Planning for Sustainable Economic Growth (CLG, 2009); PPS12: Local Spatial Planning (CLG, 2008); NPPF (Principally para.s 20, 21, 23, 34, 35, 37, 38, 47, 50, 52, 57, 73, 75, 97, 157, 161, 162 and 173) National Science and Innovation Investment Framework 2004-2014		Amendments to reference updated national policy background	
MAIN MODIFICATION MM17a	Policy Framework	Policy Framework	CSI 1 East Runcorn SA Objectives 2 – Biodiversity 3 – Water 6 – Energy Efficiency 10 – Housing 11 – Accessibility 14 - Economy 16 – Town Centres 17 – Sustainable Transport	Summary of sustainability appraisal of policy amendments.			

¹² East Runcorn Sustainable Transport Study (2011)

		SA Outcome	<p><u>Overall this policy is positive in sustainability terms. There may be some minor negative environmental effects.</u></p> <p>Overall this policy is positive in sustainability terms. There may be some negative environmental effects, however these can be managed / mitigated, particularly if suggested mitigation measures are incorporated into the policy.</p>	
--	--	------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--

Table 4: Indicative Development Phasing at East Runcorn

HOUSING			EMPLOYMENT		
	Daresbury Strategic Site - number of dwellings	Sandymoor – number of dwellings		Daresbury Park (SqM sqm)	Daresbury SIC (SqM sqm)
Phase 1 (2010/11-2020/21)	500	366	Phase 1 (2010/11-2014/15)	22,919	25,000
Phase 2 (2015/16-2025/26)	600	788	Phase 2 (2015/16-2027 5 /28 6)	22,919	47,383
Phase 3 (2020/21-2027 5 /28 6)	300	310			
Beyond Core Strategy period (2026 8 +)	-	-	Beyond Core Strategy period (2026 8 +)	26,081	24,500
Totals	1400	1464	Totals	71,919	96,883
	2864			168,802	

CS12: HOUSING MIX

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	15.7	It is a mandatory requirement of Level 6 of the Code for Sustainable Homes (which is equivalent to zero carbon) to comply with Lifetime Homes criteria.	Wording amendments.		
Submission Change SM2	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010 2011)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3.		
Minor post submission change MC1	Policy wording	Proposals for new specialist housing for the elderly, including extra-care ¹ and supported accommodation, will be encouraged in suitable locations (and sites allocated in the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan , as appropriate), particularly those providing easy access to local services and community facilities.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC2	15.3	The Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan will set out requirements and guidance on these matters for housing allocations in the Borough.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC3	15.5	Specific preferred locational criteria are set out within Halton’s Commissioning Strategy for Extra Care and these factors will influence the allocation of sites for extra care housing in later DPDs Local Plans Local Plans.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC4	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50, 56, 57 and 159) Code for Sustainable Homes – Technical Guide (CLG, 2009); Lifetime Homes, Lifetime Neighbourhoods (CLG, 2008); Lifetime Homes Criteria (Habinteg, 2010) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50, 56, 57 and 159) Code for Sustainable Homes – Technical Guide (CLG, 2009); Lifetime Homes, Lifetime Neighbourhoods (CLG, 2008); Lifetime Homes Criteria (Habinteg, 2010)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50, 56, 57 and 159) Code for Sustainable Homes – Technical Guide (CLG, 2009); Lifetime Homes, Lifetime Neighbourhoods (CLG, 2008); Lifetime Homes Criteria (Habinteg, 2010)				

CS13: AFFORDABLE HOUSING

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording	Affordable housing provision will be sought as up to 35% of the total residential floorspace proposed. The Council will seek to ensure secure <u>50% of new provision as a 75:25 split between</u> social rented and intermediate affordable housing tenures across the Borough.	Change to Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing definition of affordable housing (June 2011) to include new category of 'affordable rent' and additional clarification of the implications added to the Halton SHMA (Appendix 3).
Submission Change SM1a	16.2	Affordable housing includes social rented, <u>affordable rent</u> and intermediate housing, provided to specified eligible households whose needs are unable to be met by private market housing. Social rented housing is rented housing owned and managed by local authorities and registered <u>providers of social housing</u> social landlords , for which guideline target rents are determined through the national rent regime. <u>Affordable rented housing is let by local authorities or private registered providers to households eligible for social rented housing. Affordable Rent is subject to rent controls that require a rent of no more than 80% of the local market rent (including service charges, where applicable).</u> Intermediate affordable housing is housing at prices and rents above those of social rent, but below market price or rents, and which meet the criteria set out above, including shared equity products, other low cost homes for sale and intermediate rent.	Change to Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing definition of affordable housing (June 2011) to include new category of 'affordable rent' and additional clarification of the implications added to the Halton SHMA (Appendix 3).
Submission Change SM2	16.7	The Council will seek to achieve delivery of an appropriate tenure split between social rent, <u>affordable rent</u> and intermediate housing across the Borough as informed by the most up to date Strategic Housing Market Assessment (SHMA), and <u>Economic Viability Assessment</u> (or replacements). The initial target will be split 75:25 between these tenures, be to secure 50% of new provision across the Borough as social rented with the actual size, type and tenure of affordable supply sought on individual sites being dependent on the site location, local housing mix and identified priorities to meet local needs within the sub-area. Affordable housing provision as infill development within 'washed over' Green Belt villages may be appropriate in certain circumstances, subject to local need, character and Green Belt considerations.	Change to Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing definition of affordable housing (June 2011) to include new category of 'affordable rent' and additional clarification of the implications added to the Halton SHMA (Appendix 3).
Submission Change SM3	16.8, Final sentence	Financial contributions instead of on-site provision may also be sought in exceptional circumstances and in accordance with the <u>Site Allocations and Development</u>	Updated to be consistent with CS7

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
		Management DPD, Development Contributions SPD DPD or equivalent.	
Submission Change SM4	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010-2011)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3.
MAIN MODIFICATION MM20	Policy wording	<p>Affordable housing provision will be sought at 25% as up to 35% of the total residential units floorspace proposed. The Council will seek to ensure secure 50% of new provision as a 75:25 split between social and affordable rented tenures and 50% intermediate affordable housing tenures across the Borough.</p> <p>The provision of affordable housing must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> address the identified housing needs as quantified in the most up to date Strategic Housing Market Assessment unless it is agreed that it is preferable for the provision to be of a similar size and type to the overall mix on site; unless it is agreed with the Council to target a specific identified category of greatest housing need in the locality; and 	<p>To address the representations and comments made at the Hearing Sessions made by Barton Willmore (on behalf of Great Lime Holdings) and Peel Holdings Management. Also to ensure that the policy target is a viable in relation to the Economic Viability Assessment (DTZ).</p> <p><i>N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SM1</i></p>
MAIN MODIFICATION MM21	16.5	<p>Unmet need for affordable housing is far in excess of the proposed housing delivery targets as set out in policy CS3: Housing Supply and Locational Priorities and above the level of total completions achieved in any year since before 1994. It is therefore essential to seek to maximise the contribution to new affordable units from new housing developments. The Economic Viability Assessment has considered the realistic contribution that can be secured from new housing development across different housing areas of the Borough north and south of the river and under different market conditions. This shows that under the Mid Market Position, 25% affordable housing is deliverable at a 50% social rented and 50% intermediate housing tenure split. Although a higher percentage of affordable housing could be delivered in the Improved Market Position (40% with a 34% social rented and 64% intermediate tenure split) it is acknowledged through the assessment that it is difficult to predict whether the improved market scenario will ever be met. It is however, considered likely, based on previous cycles of the property market, that the mid market position will be reached during the Core Strategy Plan period. This shows that in the market</p>	To reflect the changes proposed to the policy wording of CS13.

		conditions prevailing in 2010 the economic viability of housing developments in some areas of the Borough were marginal and that these could not realistically support an affordable housing contribution, however, in other areas and during more 'normal' market conditions, developments could realistically deliver up to 35% as affordable.			
MAIN MODIFICATION MM22	16.6	Taking into account the viability of residential development, the policy target for affordable housing contribution has been set at 25% of the total residential units as 'up to 35%', which will be applied to all qualifying residential developments, being those on sites capable of providing a net gain of 10 or more units or on 0.33 hectares or more. Affordable housing provision at a rate lower than the target range will only be acceptable where it is demonstrated through a financial appraisal that prevailing market conditions, abnormal physical on-site constraints resulting in extraordinary costs, or higher competing use value would render the development unviable when the affordable housing contribution is taken into account.	To reflect the changes proposed to the policy wording of CSI 3.		
MAIN MODIFICATION MM23	16.7	The Council will seek to achieve delivery of an appropriate tenure split between social rent, <u>affordable rent</u> and intermediate housing across the Borough as informed by the most up to date Strategic Housing Market Assessment (SHMA) <u>and Economic Viability Assessment</u> (or replacements). The initial target will be <u>to secure 50% of new provision across the Borough as social and affordable rented tenures and 50% intermediate housing tenures, split 75:25 between these tenures, with</u> the actual size, and type and tenure of affordable supply sought on individual sites <u>will be being</u> dependent on the <u>most up to date Strategic Housing Market Assessment taking into consideration the</u> site location, local housing mix and identified priorities to meet local needs within the sub-area. Affordable housing provision as infill development within 'washed over' Green Belt villages may be appropriate in certain circumstances, subject to local need, character and Green Belt considerations.	To reflect the changes proposed to the policy wording of CSI 3. N.B. Incorporates submission minor change SM2 (above)		
Minor post submission change MCI	16.8	Financial contributions instead of on-site provision may also be sought in exceptional circumstances and in accordance with the <u>Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> , Developmenter Contributions <u>SPD DPD</u> or equivalent.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology N.B.Incorporates submission minor change SM3 (above)		
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50 and 159)</u></td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50 and 159)</u>	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>NPPF (Principally para.s 47, 50 and 159)</u>				

CS14: MEETING THE NEEDS OF GYPSIES, TRAVELLERS AND TRAVELLING SHOWPEOPLE

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	17.3	The Council is pro-active in addressing the welfare needs of the Gypsy- and Traveller, <u>and Travelling Showpeople</u> community and has worked with neighbouring authorities	Wording amendment.		
Submission Change SM2	Policy Framework – National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010 -2011)	Most up to date publication date for PPS3.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	There will be a presumption against the loss of existing <u>permanently</u> consented Gypsy and Traveller or Travelling Showpeople sites leading to or exacerbating an identified shortfall unless suitable replacement provision of equal or enhanced value are provided.	Minor clarification to aid clarity		
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>Planning policy for traveller sites (CLG, 2012)</u></td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>Planning policy for traveller sites (CLG, 2012)</u>	<p>Amendments to reference updated national policy background</p> <p>N.B. Supersedes submission minor change SM2 (above)</p>
National Policy	PPS3: Housing (CLG, 2010) <u>Planning policy for traveller sites (CLG, 2012)</u>				

CS15: SUSTAINBLE TRANSPORT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	18.1	...to encouraging healthy lifestyles through walking and cycling routes ...	Wording amendment.		
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording Point b)	• An improved rail station in central Widnes	Currently being implemented.		
Submission Change SM3	Policy wording Point b)	Identified for their potential future use within the Halton Sustainable Transport Network;	Insert comma		
Submission Change SM4	18.3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Bridgewater Way, Mersey Way, Mersey Timberland Trail and the Trans Pennine Trail <u>walking and cycling routes</u> 	To add clarification.		
Submission Change SM5	18.5	Working with neighbouring authorities will be supported in order to achieve sustainable cross boundary accessibility particularly in conjunction with the Liverpool City Region and Mersey Travel <u>Merseytravel</u> .	Spelling error.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	b) Halton's Sustainable Transport Network To support sustainable transport across the Borough, Halton's existing Sustainable Transport Network will be protected, and improvements to the existing network and the introduction of new sustainable routes and facilities will be encouraged including: • An improved rail station in central Widnes	Wording deletion		
Minor post submission change MC2	18.7	This SPD will provide guidance on accessibility; outline the requirements for Transport Assessments and Travel Plans; and, set car and cycle parking standards for different types of development. Routes and facilities to be safeguarded for their potential future use within the Borough's Sustainable Transport Network will be set out in the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD <u>Local Plan</u> in accordance with Halton's LTP.	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001); NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 157 and 162) Delivering a Sustainable Transport System (DaSTS) (DfT, 2007). </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001); NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 157 and 162) Delivering a Sustainable Transport System (DaSTS) (DfT, 2007).	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPG13: Transport (CLG, 2001); NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 41, 157 and 162) Delivering a Sustainable Transport System (DaSTS) (DfT, 2007).				

CS16: THE MERSEY GATEWAY PROJECT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording Point (a)	The land and infrastructure necessary for the successful implementation of the Mersey Gateway Bridge-Project will be safeguarded.	Wording amendment.		
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording Point (a)	As part of the Mersey Gateway Project, associated works will be supported and safeguarded including those related to the road network, road junctions, main toll plazas and the M56 with a focus on it's junctions in Halton.	Updating position and typo.		
Submission Change SM3	19.5	This incorporates works associated with the wider Mersey Gateway Project including the construction of the main toll plazas and associated structures; junction improvements to link the road network, and structures and bridges to carry the main carriageway over the Freight Line and St Helens Canal, and across Astmoor Industrial Estate.	Updating position.		
Submission Change SM4	19.7 Final sentence	It should be acknowledged that the EIA process concluded that the cumulative effects of the operational phase of the Mersey Gateway Project are mainly positive and include a range of <u>beneficial</u> permanent long term effects once the Bridge is operational.	Addition of clarity		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>NPPF (Principally para.s 31, 41 and 162) Investment in Local Major Transport Schemes (DfT, 2010)</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	NPPF (Principally para.s 31, 41 and 162) Investment in Local Major Transport Schemes (DfT, 2010)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	NPPF (Principally para.s 31, 41 and 162) Investment in Local Major Transport Schemes (DfT, 2010)				

CS17: LIVERPOOL JOHN LENNON AIRPORT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording Point (b)	Additional network capacity is proposed to be met <u>delivered</u> through the development of the EATC.	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM2	Figure 14	Include the Ancient Woodland to the west of Liverpool John Lennon Airport boundary in figure 14: Liverpool John Lennon Airport Diagram.	Design error and in response to representation received (National Trust - 00634/006).
Submission Change SM3	20.6 Final sentence	The proposed runway extension, EATC and World Cargo Centre are indicated in-on Figure 14.	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM4	20.11 First sentence	Matters relating to development within LJLA's Public Safety Zone (PSZ) (shown in-on figure 14) will be dealt with in accordance with national and local policy and guidance including the Government Circular: Control of Development in Airport Public Safety Zones ⁷ and the Planning for Risk SPD ⁸ .	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM5	Policy Framework	PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995 <u>2001</u>)	Incorrect date.
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	a) Runway Extension A runway extension to the east of the existing airport boundary, as set out in the Airport Master Plan, will require a local change to Halton's Green Belt boundary. An area of search for the Green Belt boundary change for the runway extension is shown in Figure 14. The precise extent of this change, and the detailed criteria to be met in the implementation of the runway extension, will be considered in a the Site Allocations <u>and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> or equivalent.	Additional text to fully reference intended Local Plan document and amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC2	20.7	The runway extension, as set out in the Master Plan, would require a change to Halton Borough Council's Green Belt boundary. This will be addressed through a the Site Allocations <u>and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> or equivalent document. This document will consider the detailed requirements for LJLA's future growth and subsequent runway extension. An Area of Search for the Green Belt Boundary change is shown on Figure 14; however, a the Site Allocations <u>and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> or equivalent, would <u>will</u> determine the precise extent of the Green Belt boundary change, as appropriate <u>an adjunct to the wider review of Green Belt</u>	Additional justification added to bring policy in line with changes to CS6 concerning wider Green Belt review, plus amendments to fully reference intended Local Plan document and to reflect updated terminology

		boundaries around Widnes and Hale. Any future release of Green Belt land shown within the Area of Search will only be permitted for the purposes of the Airport's runway extension and associated airport safety requirements. Land outside of the Area of Search will not be considered for Green Belt release <u>for airport purposes</u> . Public consultation will be undertaken during the stages of production for <u>the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> or equivalent document.			
Minor post submission change MC3	20.11 Final sentence	Any extension of the PSZ in accordance with LJLA's proposed runway extension will be shown in a <u>the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan</u> or equivalent.	Additional text to fully reference intended Local Plan document and amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC4	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> <p>PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995); NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 32, 33, 157 and 162) The Future of Air Transport (DfT, 2003); Cleared for Take Off: Airports Providing Lift to an Economy in Recovery (AOA, 2009)</p> </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	<p>PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995); NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 32, 33, 157 and 162) The Future of Air Transport (DfT, 2003); Cleared for Take Off: Airports Providing Lift to an Economy in Recovery (AOA, 2009)</p>	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	<p>PPG2: Green Belts (CLG, 1995); NPPF (Principally para.s 18, 19, 20, 32, 33, 157 and 162) The Future of Air Transport (DfT, 2003); Cleared for Take Off: Airports Providing Lift to an Economy in Recovery (AOA, 2009)</p>				

Executive Board

CSI 8: HIGH QUALITY DESIGN

Minor post submission change MCI	21.4	The high quality design principles for the Borough expressed in this policy will also be supported by a range of policies within the LDF Halton's Local Development Documents including the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD-Local Plan and appropriate SPDs. Area specific policies within DPDs Local Plans and SPDs will also provide design guidance to ensure that positive elements of an area's character are enhanced and reinforced.	Additional text to fully reference intended Local Plan document and amendment to reflect updated terminology				
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td> National Policy </td> <td> PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 73, 74, 75, 109, 123, 124, 125, 126, 128, 134, 135, 137, 138 and 170) </td> </tr> <tr> <td> Local Evidence </td> <td> Draft Design of New Residential Development SPD (HBC, 20092012); Design of New Industrial and Commercial Development SPD (HBC, 2005); Halton Landscape Character Assessment (TEP, 2009) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 73, 74, 75, 109, 123, 124, 125, 126, 128, 134, 135, 137, 138 and 170)	Local Evidence	Draft Design of New Residential Development SPD (HBC, 2009 2012); Design of New Industrial and Commercial Development SPD (HBC, 2005); Halton Landscape Character Assessment (TEP, 2009)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPSI: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 73, 74, 75, 109, 123, 124, 125, 126, 128, 134, 135, 137, 138 and 170)						
Local Evidence	Draft Design of New Residential Development SPD (HBC, 2009 2012); Design of New Industrial and Commercial Development SPD (HBC, 2005); Halton Landscape Character Assessment (TEP, 2009)						

Executive Summary

CSI9: SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND CLIMATE CHANGE

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Footnote 3	CLG (2010) Circular 06/2010: New Approved Documents for F, J and L and Guidance Documents.	Typing error.
Submission Change SM2	Footnote 8	CLG (2010) Code for Sustainable Homes: A Cost Review CLG (2011) Cost of Building to the Code for Sustainable Homes: Updated Cost Review	Updated cost review.
Submission Change SM3	22.8	These Energy Priority Zones will be important in the achievement of the energy generation indicative targets for Halton ^{INSERT FOOTNOTE} . ¹⁰ As detailed in the Liverpool City Region Renewable Energy Capacity Study (Arup, 2010)	To add further clarification.
Submission Change SM4	22.9	Sub-regional developments which contribute to the production of renewable energy will also be supported by the Council including the Power from the Mersey project subject to the management and mitigation of any identified environmental impacts.	Updating position.

Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording Bullets 1 and 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Code for Sustainable Homes Level 3 will be required encouraged as a minimum standard for new residential development, rising to Level 4 in 2013 and to Level 6 in 2016. The BREEAM 'Very Good' standard will be required encouraged as a minimum standard for new non-residential development, rising to 'Excellent' standard in 2013. 	Amended wording following ruling by Inspector concerning lack of supporting evidence as to why Halton should exceed national standards.
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy wording Final paragraph	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where it is not considered to be viable or feasible for development to meet sustainability standards, exceed baseline energy targets or connect to an existing or scheduled district heating network, developers will be required to make a financial contribution in accordance with CS7: Infrastructure Provision. 	Wording deleted.
Minor post submission change MC3	22.3	To ensure Halton achieves high standards of sustainability, development should is encouraged to meet the appropriate CSH and BREEAM standards where it is viable and feasible to do so, unless it is proven that this would cause the development to become unviable.	Wording change to reflect change in policy wording from 'requiring' to 'encouraging' exceedance of standards
Minor post submission change MC4	22.5	To support the new Building Regulations and to ensure the planning system contributes to reducing carbon emissions, development is expected required to show how improvements to CO ₂ emission savings can be made over the contemporary Building Regulations (Part L) baseline ⁷ with a focus on reducing the demand for energy as a first priority and then utilising	Wording change to reflect change in policy wording from requiring to encouraging exceedance of standards.

		renewable and low carbon energy. Where minimum standards cannot be exceeded, developers are required to should provide evidence that all options have been investigated and that further CO ₂ emissions savings are not feasible and / or viable.			
Minor post submission change MC5	22.6 Footnote	⁸CLG (2010) Code for Sustainable Homes: A Cost Review CLG (2011) Cost of Building to the Code for Sustainable Homes: Updated Cost Review			
Minor post submission change MC6	22.8 New Footnote	As detailed in the Liverpool City Region Renewable Energy Capacity Study (Arup, 2010)			
Minor post submission change MC7	22.9	Sub-regional developments which contribute to the production of renewable energy will also be supported by the Council including the Power from the Mersey project subject to the management and mitigation of any identified environmental impacts.			
Minor post submission change MC8	22.10	Financial contributions from development will be sought where it is proven unviable and / or unfeasible to meet the required CSH or BREEAM standard, exceed baseline energy targets in line with the successful implementation of the revisions to Part L of the Building Regulations, or connect to an existing or scheduled district heating network. This financial contribution will be sought in accordance with CS7: Infrastructure Provision and will be used to contribute to wider renewable and low carbon energy initiatives across the Borough.	Justification deleted following deletion of requirement from policy wording.		
Minor post submission change MC9	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS1: Supplement - Planning and Climate Change (CLG, 2007); PPS22: Renewable Energy (CLG, 2004); Consultation on PPS: Planning for a Low Carbon Future in a Changing Climate (2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98 and 99) Climate Change Act (HM Gov, 2008); UK Renewable Energy Strategy (HM Gov, 2009); Circular 06/2010: New Approved Documents for F, J and L and Guidance Documents (CLG, 2010) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS1: Supplement - Planning and Climate Change (CLG, 2007); PPS22: Renewable Energy (CLG, 2004); Consultation on PPS: Planning for a Low Carbon Future in a Changing Climate (2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98 and 99) Climate Change Act (HM Gov, 2008); UK Renewable Energy Strategy (HM Gov, 2009); Circular 06/2010: New Approved Documents for F, J and L and Guidance Documents (CLG, 2010)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS1: Supplement - Planning and Climate Change (CLG, 2007); PPS22: Renewable Energy (CLG, 2004); Consultation on PPS: Planning for a Low Carbon Future in a Changing Climate (2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98 and 99) Climate Change Act (HM Gov, 2008); UK Renewable Energy Strategy (HM Gov, 2009); Circular 06/2010: New Approved Documents for F, J and L and Guidance Documents (CLG, 2010)				

CS20: NATURAL AND HISTORIC ENVIRONMENT

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	23.4	Halton has three Sites of Significant Special Scientific Importance Interest (SSSI)	Typos.		
Submission Change SM2	23.4	Locally significant sites include 47 Local Nature Reserves (LNRs) Local Wildlife Sites and ten Local Nature Reserves (LNRs) which support a range of habitats and species, three Local Geological Sites, 154ha of woodland and numerous priority habitats and species identified within the Halton Biodiversity Action Plan (BAP).	Incorrect information and in response to representation received (Cheshire Wildlife Trust – 00867/00002/005).		
Submission Change SM3	23.5	This is essential for the mitigation, dispersal and genetic exchange of species, contributing to the Borough's green infrastructure network (Policy CS21).	Apostrophe missing.		
Submission Change SM4	23.7	Of these designations, Daresbury Hall, a Grade II* Listed Building, and the Undercroft of West Range (Norton Priory) and Halton Castle, both Scheduled Monuments, are considered to be 'at risk' and require necessary maintenance.	Wording amendment.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS5: Planning for the Historic Environment (CLG, 2010); PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation (CLG, 2005); Consultation Paper on PPS9: Planning for a Natural and Healthy Environment (CLG, 2010) NPPF (Principally para.s 109, 110, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140 and 141) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS5: Planning for the Historic Environment (CLG, 2010); PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation (CLG, 2005); Consultation Paper on PPS9: Planning for a Natural and Healthy Environment (CLG, 2010) NPPF (Principally para.s 109, 110, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140 and 141)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS5: Planning for the Historic Environment (CLG, 2010); PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation (CLG, 2005); Consultation Paper on PPS9: Planning for a Natural and Healthy Environment (CLG, 2010) NPPF (Principally para.s 109, 110, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140 and 141)				

CS21: GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	24.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other – including agricultural land, allotments, community gardens, cemeteries and churchyards 	In response to representation received (Cheshire Wildlife Trust – 00867/00002/006).		
Submission Change SM2	24.3	This is the potential for green infrastructure to have a range of functions and to deliver a broad range of benefits.	Wording amendment.		
Submission Change SM3	24.4	Green infrastructure creates a sense of place, allowing for greater appreciation of valuable landscapes and biodiversity and heritage assets.	Comma missing.		
Submission Change SM4	24.5	Future studies, including a strategy for Green Infrastructure Strategy , will assist in this approach identifying the current network, areas of deficiency and surplus, and opportunities for enhancement and, where possible, expansion.	Wording amendment to maintain flexibility.		
Submission Change SM5	24.6	These standards will be updated through the a strategy for Green Infrastructure Strategy following the changing approach from open space to the wider green infrastructure network and as such will necessitate an update to the evidence base.	Wording amendment to maintain flexibility.		
Submission Change SM6	24.7	Impacts on neighbouring authorities' European sites, including the Sefton Coast Special Area of Conservation (SAC) and the Sefton section of the Ribble and Alt Estuaries SPA and Ramsar Site, will also be managed through the Council working in partnership with neighbouring authorities on appropriate Management Plans.	Apostrophe missing. Comma missing.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy 6 th bullet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying the Borough's multifunctional green infrastructure network and preparing detailed policies within the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan for its protection. 	Amendment to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC2	24.5	Clear priorities for the protection, enhancement and, where appropriate, the expansion of green infrastructure will be set out in the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD and through masterplanning for strategic sites. This could include the potential designation of land by communities as 'Local Green Space' in accordance with NPPF where a green area can be demonstrated to be special to a local community.	Addition to reflect new "Local Green Space" designation introduced through NPPF.		
Minor post submission change	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation</td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS9: Biodiversity and Geological Conservation				

MC3		<p>(CLG, 2009); Consultation Paper on PPS9: Planning for a Natural and Healthy Environment (CLG, 2010); PPS12: Local Spatial Planning (CLG, 2008) NPPE (Principally para.s 58, 59, 61, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77 79, 80, 83, 99, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 125, 165, 166, 167, 168 and 171)</p>	
-----	--	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--

Executive Board Draft

CS22: HEALTH AND WELL-BEING

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	25.3	In accordance with the Borough's partners and applicable strategies, including the Halton Joint Strategic Needs Assessment, and the " Our Ambition for Health " Strategy and Commissioning Strategic Plan ⁵ , ⁵ NHS Halton and St Helens PCT (2009) "Our Ambition for Health" Strategy and Commissioning Strategic Plan	Amending title.
Submission Change SM4	25.3 Footnote 5	"Our Ambition for Health" Strategy and Commissioning Strategic Plan (NHS Halton and St Helens PCT, 2009)	Amending title.
Submission Change SM2	25.6	In addition to these interventions there is a need to manage the concentration and clustering of hot food takeaway shops across the Borough which can have potential adverse impacts on community health and on the viability of the Borough's town, district and local centres (CS5: A Network of Centres).	Apostrophe missing.
Submission Change SM3	Footnote 7	Government e Office for Science (2010) Tackling Obesity: Future Choices – Project Report 2 nd Edition	Capitalising title.

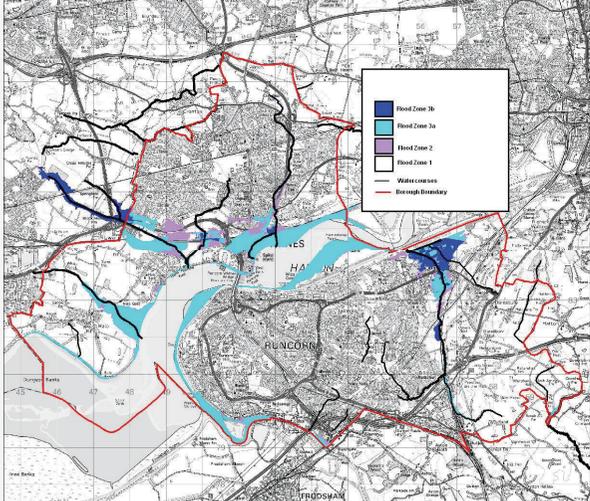
Minor post submission change MCI	25.6	In Halton, 37 36.3 % of Year 6 pupils were classed as overweight or obese in 2008/09 2009/10 , this is higher than both the North West (23 34.1 %) and England (32.6 33.3 %) ⁷ . A Hot Food Take-a-Way SPD has been developed to set out specific criteria for the assessment of proposals for new hot food take-aways (Use Class A5) to ensure that possible adverse effects caused by an over-abundance of hot food take-aways are minimised.	Incorporation of figures from updated source document and grammatical corrections				
Minor post submission change MC2	25.6 Footnotes	Government office Office for Science (2010) Tackling Obesity: Future Choices – Project Report 2 nd Edition HBC (2010 2011) State of the Borough Report (National Child Measurement Programme)	Correction and reference to updated source document.				
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td>PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 34, 37, 61, 69, 70 and 171).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Local Evidence</td> <td>Understanding Factors Affecting Health in Halton (Lancaster University, 2003); Halton Joint Strategic Needs</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 34, 37, 61, 69, 70 and 171).	Local Evidence	Understanding Factors Affecting Health in Halton (Lancaster University, 2003); Halton Joint Strategic Needs	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005) NPPF (Principally para.s 29, 30, 34, 37, 61, 69, 70 and 171).						
Local Evidence	Understanding Factors Affecting Health in Halton (Lancaster University, 2003); Halton Joint Strategic Needs						

			Assessment (Halton and St Helens NHS, 2008 and refresh 2009); "Our Ambition for Health" Strategy and Commissioning Strategic Plan (NHS Halton and St Helens PCT, 2009); State of the Borough Report (HBC, 2010); Hot Food Takeaway SPD (HBC, 2012)	
--	--	--	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--

Executive Board Draft

CS23: MANAGING POLLUTION AND RISK

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording Point (a)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Development proposals should not exacerbate and where possible, should minimise, all forms of emissions and odour, water, noise and light pollution 	Comma's missing.
Submission Change SM2	Policy wording Point (a)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ...Development will only be permitted where the land has, or will be, made suitable for the proposed use... 	Amend commas.
Submission Change SM3	26.4	<p>Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) levels at the junctions of Milton Road/Gerrard Street and Deacon Road/Albert Road in the Town Centre were found to be above objective levels ^{INSERT FOOTNOTE}, with the source of the exceedance found to be emissions from road traffic.</p> <p><u>INSERT FOOTNOTE</u> Objective levels are the level of concentrations of major air pollutants which should not be exceeded, due to the likely impact on human health (DEFRA).</p>	Add clarity as to what objective levels are.
Submission Change SM4	26.4	In order to address the issues in the AQMA's, an Air Quality Action Plan will be drawn up...	Wording amendment.
Submission Change SM5	26.4	Any specific measures arising from the Air Quality Action Plan which require an input from pPlanning will be addressed in a relevant LDF document.	Typo.
Submission Change SM6	26.5	In 2010, Aa Local Brownfield Strategy was produced for Halton, in partnership with the Homes and Communities Agency.	Typo.
Submission Change SM7	26.6 Footnote 4	The Coal Authority (2010) Halton Coal Mining Referral Area www.coal.decc.gov.uk/assets/coal/whatwedo/halton_referral.pdf	Updating link.
Submission Change SM8	26.11	At the time of publication, the flood risk modelling contained within the SFRA Level 2 was awaiting approval from- the Environment Agency have approved the assessment and as such, flood risk mapping from Halton's SFRA Level +2 is included below to illustrate the areas at risk from flooding in the Borough.	In response to representations received (Environment Agency – S012/00002/004).

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM5	Figure 15	 <p>Figure 15: SFRA Level +2 Flood Risk Areas (2007) (2011)</p>	In response to representations received (Environment Agency – S012/00002/004).
Minor post submission change MCI	26.4 Last sentence	Any specific measures arising from the Air Quality Action Plan which require an input from Planning will be addressed in a relevant LDF Development Plan document	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC2	26.9	Currently this extends over a small area of the Borough, but in accordance with the runway extension proposals the PSZ may be extended accordingly to reflect the larger area of risk associated with the airport, in accordance with detail to be included in the Site Allocations and Development Management DPD-Local Plan .	Amendment to reflect updated terminology
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	<p>National Policy</p> <p>PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); PPG14: Development on Unstable Land (CLG, 1990); PPS23: Planning and Pollution Control (CLG, 2004); PPG24: Planning and Noise (CLG, 1994); PPS25: Development and Flood Risk (CLG, 2010); NPPF (Principally para.s 94, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 120, 121, 122, 123 and 172) Circular 01/2010 (DfT, 2010)</p>	Amendments to reference updated national policy background

CS24: WASTE

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	Policy wording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> encourage the sustainable transport of waste and promote use of site <u>specific</u> waste management plans; and, 	To add clarification.		
Submission Change SM2	27.3	A Spatial Strategy and Sites Report, Issues and Options Report and <u>two a-Preferred Options Reports</u> have been prepared for the Joint Waste DPD...	Updating position.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording 1 st and 2 nd bullets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>identify and safeguard (where appropriate) waste management sites in appropriate locations suitable for new and enhanced waste management facilities for the identified waste management needs of the Liverpool City Region (Merseyside and Halton). The allocation of sites and detailed development management policies will be provided in the Joint Merseyside and Halton Waste DPDLocal Plan;</u> <u>ensure that the Borough can meet the identified waste management needs as determined through the Joint Merseyside and Halton Waste DPDLocal Plan or equivalent;</u> 	Amendments to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC2	Policy wording 4 th bullet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>encourage</u> the sustainable transport of waste and promote use of site <u>specific</u> waste management plans; and, 	Additional wording to add clarity		
Minor post submission change MC3	27.3	The Joint Merseyside and Halton Waste DPD Local Plan (Joint Waste DPD Local Plan) will provide policy guidance standards for waste and allocate sites for waste purposes. A Spatial Strategy and Sites Report, Issues and Options Report and <u>a two Preferred Options Reports</u> have been prepared for the Joint Waste DPD Local Plan outlining the various strategies and options available and recommending a Sub-Regional Spatial Strategy.	Update to reflect current stage of Waste Local Plan or change to more generic to avoid text becoming out of date?		
Minor post submission change MC4	27.4	This approach is in accordance with Halton's Municipal Waste Management Strategy ² and recognises the importance of the sub-regional apportionment of waste and through the Joint Waste DPD Local Plan will provide alternative facilities for recycling, reprocessing, treatment and disposal of Halton's waste.	Amendments to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Local Evidence</td> <td>Municipal Waste Management Strategy for Halton (HBC, 2008); State of the Borough Report (HBC, 2010); Emerging Joint</td> </tr> </table>	Local Evidence	Municipal Waste Management Strategy for Halton (HBC, 2008); State of the Borough Report (HBC, 2010); Emerging Joint	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
Local Evidence	Municipal Waste Management Strategy for Halton (HBC, 2008); State of the Borough Report (HBC, 2010); Emerging Joint				

MC5		Merseyside and Halton Waste DPD Local Plan.	
-----	--	----------------------------------------------------	--

Executive Board Draft

CS25: MINERALS

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change		
Submission Change SM1	Footnote 1	The Coal Authority (2011) Surface Mining Coal Resource Areas www.coal.decc.gov.uk/assets/coal/whatwedo/Halton(B)_CoalResources_AI_150dpi.pdf	Updating link.		
Submission Change SM2	28.4	The incorporation of resource efficient design and construction techniques will also be vital in minimiseding the need for minerals extraction and should be pursued in accordance with CSI 9: Sustainable Development and Climate Change.	Typo.		
Submission Change SM3	28.5	Proposals for minerals extraction will be required to ensure that environmental, social and economic issues and impacts are fully considered and where adverse affects are identified, they these are effectively managed and mitigated.	Wording amendment.		
Minor post submission change MCI	Policy wording	The Site Allocations and Development Management DPD Local Plan will allocate areas of minerals resources and set out the criteria for their potential extraction.	Amendments to reflect updated terminology		
Minor post submission change MC2	28.2	Minerals Policy Statement 1: Planning and Minerals (MPS1) The National Planning Policy Framework (NPPF) requires Minerals Planning Authorities to plan for minerals within their administrative boundaries. A requirement of MPS1 the NPPF is to define identify areas of search, preferred areas, and site specific allocations for future minerals development as well as Minerals Safeguarding aAreas where minerals exist and also to develop policies for locations where minerals resources of national or local importance are known to exist so that these resources are not sterilised by other forms of development.	Amendments to reference updated national policy background		
Minor post submission change MC3	Policy Framework	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>National Policy</td> <td> PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); MPS1: Planning and Minerals (CLG, 2006); MPS2: Controlling and Mitigating the Environmental Effects of Mineral Extraction in England (CLG, 2005); Technical Guidance to the National Planning Policy Framework: Minerals Policy (CLG, 2012) National and Regional Guidelines for Aggregates Provision in England 2005-2020 (CLG, 2009) </td> </tr> </table>	National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); MPS1: Planning and Minerals (CLG, 2006); MPS2: Controlling and Mitigating the Environmental Effects of Mineral Extraction in England (CLG, 2005); Technical Guidance to the National Planning Policy Framework: Minerals Policy (CLG, 2012) National and Regional Guidelines for Aggregates Provision in England 2005-2020 (CLG, 2009)	Amendments to reference updated national policy background
National Policy	PPS1: Delivering Sustainable Development (CLG, 2005); MPS1: Planning and Minerals (CLG, 2006); MPS2: Controlling and Mitigating the Environmental Effects of Mineral Extraction in England (CLG, 2005); Technical Guidance to the National Planning Policy Framework: Minerals Policy (CLG, 2012) National and Regional Guidelines for Aggregates Provision in England 2005-2020 (CLG, 2009)				

Executive Board Draft

SECTION DIVIDER

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Minor post submission change MCI	Section break	<p style="text-align: center;">Halton Borough Council</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Core Strategy</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Revised Proposed <u>Post Submission Changes</u> Document</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Appendices</p>	

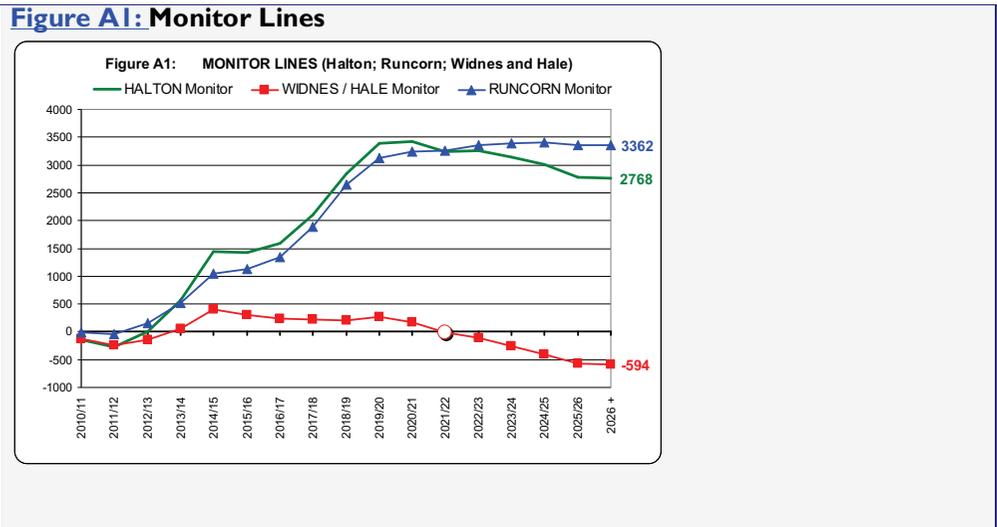
Executive Board Draft

APPENDIX I: HOUSING TRAJECTORIES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Paragraph 1	Housing trajectories track housing completions (as included in the annual Halton Housing Baseline reports) and forecast potential completions (as included in the annual Halton SHLAA) against the housing development targets as set out in Policy CS3.	To add clarification.
Submission Change SM2	Paragraph 2	Figures from the SHLAA present a potential developable and deliverable number of dwellings by year on individual sites. Updated annually, the SHLAA is subject to independent scrutiny being produced in consultation with the development community, and whilst the figures represent the potential number of units that could be provided on individual sites, it is not intended to be a forecast of actual completions across the Borough as a whole. Figures are drawn from the 2010 SHLAA which contains single year estimates to 2026 with the remaining identified supply shown as 2026+	Wording amendment .and additional text to add clarification
Submission Change SM3	Paragraph 3	The Monitor Line (Figure A1) shows how many dwellings above or below the planned rate of housing supply the identified potential supply is at any one time.	To clarify which graph the text is referring to and wording amendment.
Submission Change SM4	Paragraph 3	The Manage Line (Figures A2 and A3) indicates the number of completions required in each year to address any projected shortfall or surplus in supply.	To clarify which graph the text is referring to.
Submission Change SM5	Paragraph 4	In addition, a trajectory can be has been created showing the cumulative proportion of actual and projected supply delivered on Previously Developed Land (PDL) (Figure A4).	To improve wording.

Submission Change
SM6

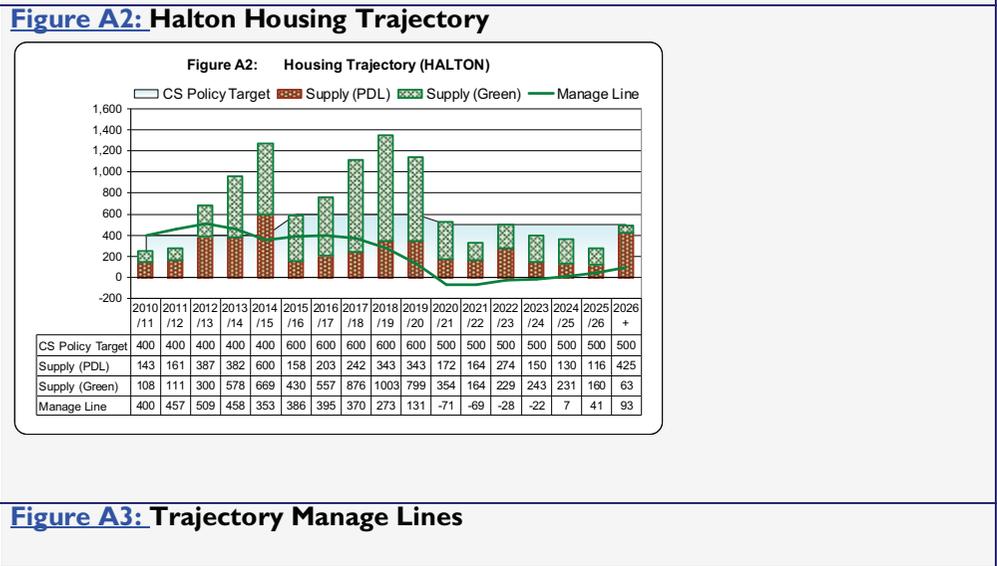
Monitor Lines



For consistency and to add clarity

Submission Change
SM7

Housing Trajectory



For consistency and to add clarity

Submission Change
SM8

Trajectory Manage Lines

For consistency and to add clarity

		<p>Figure A3: TRAJECTORY MANAGE LINES (Halton, Runcorn, Widnes / Hale)</p>	
<p>Submission Change SM9</p>	<p>Brownfield (PDL) Trajectory</p>	<p>Figure A4: BROWNFIELD (PDL) TRAJECTORY (Halton, Runcorn, Widnes / Hale)</p>	<p>For consistency and to add clarity Corrects previous highlighted figure from 38% to 39%</p>
<p>Minor post submission change MCI</p>	<p>Housing Trajectories (Figures A1-4)</p>	<p>Updated Housing Trajectory Figures [To be inserted prior to public consultation]</p>	<p>Updates to Housing Trajectory figures necessary due to changes to housing requirement (Main Modification)</p>

			MMI) and reappraisal of housing land supply at 2010.
--	--	--	--------------------------------------------------------------

Executive Board Draft

APPENDIX 2: TOWN CENTRE BOUNDARIES

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Main title	APPENDIX 2 TOWN <u>AND DISTRICT</u> CENTRE BOUNDARIES	To add clarification
Submission Change SM2	Sub-title	Widnes <u>Town Centre Boundary</u>	To add clarification
Submission Change SM3	Sub-title	Runcorn Old Town <u>District Centre Boundary</u>	To add clarification
Submission Change SM4	Sub-title	Halton Lea <u>Town Centre Boundary</u>	To add clarification

Executive Board

APPENDIX 3: MONITORING FRAMEWORK

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	CS1 – Delivery of development within the Key Areas of Change (Implementation and Delivery)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Production and adoption of SPDs for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Daresbury Strategic Site 	To add further clarification.
Submission Change SM2	CS1 – Development in the Green Belt (Implementation and Delivery)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Production and adoption of Site aAllocations DPD 	Typo.
Submission Change SM3	CS3 – Supply of Available Housing Land (Targets)	Maintain a 5 year supply of deliverable housing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Boroughwide In Runcorn (based on 57% of relevant Borough targets) In Widnes / Hale (based on 43% of relevant Borough targets) 	To add clarity and consistency with CS1.
Submission Change SM4	CS3 – Housing Trajectory including net housing completion (Implementation and Delivery)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Production and Aadoption of Site Allocations and Development Management DPD by 2014 to ensure adequate sites exist to maintain housing land supply 	Typo.
Submission Change SM5	CS5 – Completions of main town centre uses within designated centres, by type (Targets)	100% of A1, A2, A3, A4, A5, B1a) and D2 completions within the Borough's Town Centres, the District Centre and Neighbourhood Centres	Target inconsistent with CS1 and CS4.

Submission Change SM6	CS5 – New Neighbourhood Centres (Targets)	Creation of new neighbourhood centres at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upton Rocks • Sandymoor • Daresbury Strategic Site • Runcorn Waterfront • West Bank 	To add further clarification.
Submission Change SM7	CS9 – Delivery of employment development across Key Area of Change (Targets)	Total employment opportunities total 2930 ha	Incorrect total.
Submission Change SM8	CS9 – Delivery of retail floorspace in Widnes Town Centre (Targets)	Delivery of up to: 25,000 25,300 sqm of convenience/comparison goods	Incorrect total.
Submission Change SM9	CS9 – Delivery of Residential Development across South Widnes Key Area of Change (Targets)	Completion of 390-400 new dwellings across the area within the plan period, in accordance with the broad timings set out in the Core Strategy at CS1	Incorrect total.
Submission Change SM10	CS10 – Delivery of retail floorspace (Targets)	Delivery of 3,000 5200 sqm of retail floorspace in Runcorn Old Town in line with policy	Incorrect total.
Submission Change SM11	CS10 – Delivery of residential development (Targets)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completion of 1330-1500 residential units at Runcorn Waterfront aligned with the broad timescales included in the Core Strategy at CS1. 	Incorrect total.
Submission Change	CS11 –	Indicator	In response to representations

SM12	Retention of Daresbury Firs and establishment of a green infrastructure network	Retention <u>Conservation</u> of Daresbury Firs and establishment of a green infrastructure network Target • <u>Delivery of at least 40ha of open space</u>	received (Natural England – S075/00006/019)
Submission Change SM13	CS13 – Split between social rented and intermediate homes <u>Percentage of affordable homes secured as social rented properties</u> (Targets)	75:25 Social rented: Intermediate homes on applicable sites delivering affordable housing <u>Indicator</u> <u>Social rented floorspace as a percentage of all affordable housing floorspace secured from market housing developments</u> Target • <u>50% social rented</u>	Change to Planning Policy Statement 3: Housing definition of affordable housing (June 2011) to include new category of ‘affordable rent’ and additional clarification of the implications added to the Halton SHMA (Appendix 3).
Submission Change SM14	CS15 – Widnes Railway Station	Indicators Widnes Railway Station Targets Improvements to passenger facilities at Widnes Railway Station Implementation and Delivery • Continue to work in partnership with Merseytravel to seek a funding to re-open this rail line. • Development Management approach to any planning applications at the station to enhance the facilities for all users	Scheme implemented.
Submission Change SM15	CS21 – Extent of Green Infrastructure network (Implementation)	Production of <u>a strategy for Green Infrastructure Strategy</u> in partnership with other Council departments.	To be in accordance with CS21.

	and Delivery)		
Submission Change SM16	CS22 – Percentage / number of A5 (Hot-Food Take-away) units within town, district and local centres (Implementation and Delivery)	Minimise percentage and avoid clustering <u>Number of designated frontages/centres complying with SPD policy.</u>	Align indicator with forthcoming Hot Food Takeaway SPD.
Minor post submission change MCI	Monitoring Framework	Updates to a number of policy indicators and targets as consequence of post-examination Main Modifications [To be updated prior to public consultation]	To ensure indicators and targets relate to updated policies

Executive Board

APPENDIX 4: SCHEDULE OF HALTON UDP POLICIES TO BE REPLACED

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change						
Submission Change SM1	Title	APPENDIX 4 SCHEDULE OF HALTON UDP POLICIES TO BE REPLACED	To be in accordance with Contents Page.						
Submission Change SM2	Title of table	See table below.	To add clarity.						
Submission Change SM3	Key Areas of Change	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>CS9</td> <td>South Widnes</td> <td>RG1, RG2, RG3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CS10</td> <td>West Runcorn</td> <td>RG4</td> </tr> </table>	CS9	South Widnes	RG1, RG2, RG3	CS10	West Runcorn	RG4	Due to issues regarding the boundaries on the Proposals Map.
CS9	South Widnes	RG1, RG2, RG3							
CS10	West Runcorn	RG4							

Halton Core Strategy: Revised Proposed Submission Document	Halton UDP Policies to be Replaced
------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Executive Board

APPENDIX 5: GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND LIST OF ACRONYMS

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM1	Affordable Housing	Affordable housing includes social rented, affordable rented and intermediate housing, provided at below market rates to specified eligible households whose needs are not met by the market and includes social rented and intermediate housing . A full definition is included in Annex B to PPS3: Housing .	Updating position and removing duplicate information.
Submission Change SM2	AA Appropriate Assessment	Comprising the latter two stages of Habitats Regulations Assessment (HRA)...	Typo.
Submission Change SM3	Conservation Area	This “specialness” is judged against local and regional criteria, rather than national importance, and designation leads to a restriction of permitted development rights .	Typo
Submission Change SM4	New insertion after District Heating	EATC Eastern Access Transport Corridor The EATC is a proposed new road which would become the main access to Liverpool John Lennon Airport, as set out in the Airport’s Masterplan. The proposed route passes through Halton’s Green Belt.	To add a definition to an acronym used within the Core Strategy.
Submission Change SM5	HRA Habitats Regulation Assessment	Habitats Regulations Assessment	Typo.
Submission Change SM6	HRA Habitats Regulation Assessment	HRA has been carried out on the Core Strategy.	To add clarity and consistency with EqlA reference.
Submission Change SM7	LTP Local Transport Plan	An LTP sets out the Council’s objectives, strategies and policies for transport, detailing outlining the schemes and initiatives that will may be delivered during the course of the plan , together with the performance indicators and targets used to monitor progress.	Wording amendments and to clarify.
Submission Change SM8	SA Sustainability Appraisal	SA incorporating SEA has been carried out on the Core Strategy.	To add clarity and consistency with EqlA reference.
Submission Change SM9	SHLAA Strategic Housing Land Availability Assessment	A SHLAA is a systematic annual assessment of the land developable and deliverable land for housing within an area. The assessment includes a ‘Call for Sites’ exercise where the public can promote sites as being suitable for housing development and appraisal of deliverability by a panel of developers and Registered Social Landlords (RSLs) active in the local market.	Wording amendments.

Ref	Section / Paragraph	Change proposed to Revised Proposed Submission Document (May 2011)	Reason for change
Submission Change SM10	SHMA Strategic Housing Market Assessment	<u>A SHMA is a study across an identified largely 'self contained' housing market to provide an understanding of how the market operates and is likely to operate in the future.</u>	Wording amendments.
Submission Change SM11	UDP Unitary Development Plan	A UDP is a development plan prepared under the pre-2004 system by a Metropolitan district or Unitary Local Authority, which contains policies equivalent to those in both a structure plan and local plan, forming the part of the authority's statutory development plan. Policies from which are saved for an initial 3 year, or indeterminate period by consent of the Secretary of State and form part of the Development Plan for an area until superseded or otherwise deleted by a Development Plan Document (DPD). <u>A UDP is a development plan prepared under the pre-2004 planning system by a Local Planning Authority. Halton's UDP consists of two parts: Part 1 (Strategic Policies and Proposals) and Part 2 which gives detailed proposals for the use and development of land. There is also a Proposals Map, which illustrates the land allocations in relation to policies and proposals. The Halton Local Development Framework (LDF) is intended to replace the UDP. However, it is necessary to continue to save many of the policies within the UDP for a number of years, whilst the LDF documents are being prepared. The Council made a request to, and has received confirmation from, the Secretary of State for the vast majority of adopted UDP policies to be saved beyond the automatic three years from the adoption of the UDP on 7th April 2005.</u>	To update position and make explanation clearer.
Submission Change SM12	Use Classes Order	The Town and Country Planning (Use Classes) Order 1987 and subsequent amendments, group a number of land uses into categories or 'Use Classes'. <u>Planning permission for change of use from one use class to another is generally required.</u>	To add further clarification.
Minor post submission change MCI	AAP	Area Action Plan— An AAP is a Development Plan Document (DPD) within the Local Development Framework (LDF), which provides the planning framework for a specific geographic area.	Reflecting replacement of term "AAP" with "Local Plan" throughout the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC2	AMR	Authority's annual Monitoring Report	Reflecting change in terminology introduced through Localism Act and Local Planning Regs 2012
Minor post submission change	New insertion: Development	<u>Development Plan Development plan is the term used to refer to a local authority's statutory adopted planning policies and proposals. The development plan</u>	Addition of definition to term referred to in the Core Strategy

MC3	Plan	can consist of a series of documents (such as the UDP, Local Plans and Neighbourhood Plans). Applications for planning permissions must be determined in accordance with the adopted development plan for the area.	
Minor post submission change MC4	DPD	Development Plan Document—Part of the Local Development Framework (LDF); DPDs form part of the statutory development plan for an area. DPDs also include Area Action Plan DPDs.	Reflecting replacement of term “DPD” with “Local Plan” throughout the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC5	New insertion ERSTS	<u>East Runcorn Sustainable Transport Study</u> The East Runcorn Sustainable Transport Study (ERSTS) is a key piece of evidence supporting the East Runcorn policy in the Core Strategy. The study examined the likely impact of the development proposed at East Runcorn on the surrounding road network and suggested improvements to transport infrastructure to offset any negative impacts.	Addition of definition of a term referred to in the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC6	New insertion: Enterprise Zone	<u>Enterprise Zone</u> An Enterprise Zone is a specific area that has been designated to encourage the creation of new businesses and jobs. They are subject to a number of incentives such as Business Rates discounts and simplified planning requirements.	Addition of definition to reflect Enterprise Zone at Daresbury referred to in the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC7	LDF	<u>Local Development Framework</u> The LDF is the portfolio of <u>planning policy documents</u> Local Development Documents (LDDs) including Local Plans Development Plan Documents (DPDs) , Supplementary Planning Documents (SPDs) and process documents, including the Statement of Community Involvement (SCI), Local Development Scheme (LDS) and the Authority's annual Monitoring Report (AMR). The LDF also includes the Saved Policies of the Unitary Development Plan (UDP), which will eventually be replaced by policies in LDDs.	Reflecting change in terminology introduced through Localism Act, NPPF and Local Planning Regs 2012
Minor post submission change MC8	New insertion: LDO	<u>Local Development Order</u> A Local Development Order (LDO) automatically grants planning permission for all types of development detailed in the order, and as such removed the need for a planning application to be made. LDOs themselves are subject to public consultation and must be adopted by the Local Planning Authority (subject to the agreement of the Secretary of State).	Addition of definition of a term referred to in the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC9	New insertion: LEP	<u>Local Enterprise Partnership</u> A Local Enterprise Partnership (LEP) is a partnership between local authorities and businesses to help deliver economic growth and job creation. Halton Borough Council is a member of the Liverpool City Region LEP.	Addition of definition to reflect establishment of Liverpool City Region Local Enterprise Partnership
Minor post submission change MC10	New insertion: Local Plan	<u>Local Plan</u> A Local Plan is the statutory planning policy document for a local authority area, which is produced to guide the location of development and provide local policies for determining planning applications. This Core Strategy is a Local Plan, and other documents produced for Halton such as Site Allocations will also be a Local	Reflecting change in terminology introduced through Localism Act, NPPF and Local Planning Regs 2012

		Plan. Supplementary Planning Documents and other procedural planning policy documents are not Local Plans.	
Minor post submission change MC11	New insertion: NPPF	National Planning Policy Framework The NPPF establishes high-level planning principles for England and requirements for the LDF planning system, covering the full range of land use topics from sustainable development, to the historic environment, to flood risk. It is the single statement of the Government's national planning policy for England.	Reflecting release of National Planning Policy Framework in March 2012
Minor post submission change MC12	New insertion: Neighbourhood Development Plan	Neighbourhood Plan / Neighbourhood Development Plan Neighbourhood Plans are planning policy documents produced by local communities to allow them to shape their local area. They form part of the development plan for the area and therefore planning applications must be determined in accordance with their content.	Reflecting introduction of new form of planning policy document of local areas introduced through Localism Act, NPPF and Local Planning Regs 2012
Minor post submission change MC13	PINs	Planning Inspectorate PINs is the Government Agency with responsibility for processing planning and enforcement appeals and holding examinations into Local Plans Development Plan Documents .	Reflecting the replacement of term "DPD" with "Local Plan" throughout the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC14	PPG	Planning Policy Guidance—PPGs are Central Government statements of national planning policy guidance.	Introduction of NPPF in March 2012 saw the cancellation of existing PPGs
Minor post submission change MC15	PPS	Planning Policy Statement—PPSs are prepared by Central Government as statements of national planning policy and provide guidance to local planning authorities and others on planning policy and the operation of the planning system.	Introduction of NPPF in March 2012 saw the cancellation of existing PPGs
Minor post submission change MC16	SA	Sustainability Appraisal This process appraises the social, environmental and economic effects of the policies contained within Local Development Documents (LDDs), including all Local Plans Development Plan Documents (DPDs) and where appropriate, Supplementary Planning Documents (SPDs). SA incorporating SEA has been carried out on the Core Strategy.	Reflecting the replacement of term "DPD" with "Local Plan" throughout the Core Strategy
Minor post submission change MC17	SPD	Supplementary Planning Document Part of the LDF, SPDs provide supplementary information in respect of the policies contained in Local Plans DPDs , and tend to focus on particular issues or on particular places. They do not form part of the Development Plan and are not subject to an independent examination.	Reflecting the replacement of term "DPD" with "Local Plan" throughout the Core Strategy

REPORT TO:	Executive Board
DATE:	14 th June 2012
REPORTING OFFICER:	Strategic Director, Communities
SUBJECT:	Review of The Arts Strategy
PORTFOLIO:	Neighbourhood, Leisure and Sport
WARD(S)	Borough-wide

1.0 **PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

1.1 To review and update The Borough Arts Strategy produced in 2008.

2.0 **RECOMMENDATION: That Executive Board approve**

1) **Work to review and refresh the Borough Arts Strategy be carried out in house; and**

2) **Public consultation takes place to support this review**

3.0 **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

3.1 In 2008 the council commissioned an arts strategy from an external consultant. It set out to identify where service improvements could be made, to link work in the arts to the council's wider corporate objectives, to strengthen cross sector working and to assist in business planning in the arts.

3.2 In developing an arts strategy the council aspired to achieve: -

- a. A recognition of the value of arts and culture right across the work of the Council
- b. The importance of arts and culture as a key driver of the quality of life will be acknowledged in corporate strategies
- c. The Council will support and encourage high quality arts activities which have integrity, and in which imagination, originality and innovation are valued.
- d. The community will be able – and encouraged – to take part in and experience high quality arts activity, and to be able to share in the social, educational and economic benefits which the arts can offer.

It is now four years on from the publication of this strategy and it is now in need of review.

3.3 Attached as an appendix is a copy of the arts strategy which will be subject to public consultation. A revised arts strategy will help shape priorities and strengthen the local delivery of the arts in Halton.

4.0 **POLICY IMPLICATIONS**

4.1 The arts strategy will need to take account of existing local, regional and national policies. It will also need to link with the council's priorities.

5.0 **FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS**

5.1 All work will be undertaken within existing resources.

6.0 **RISK ANALYSIS**

6.1 The Arts Council have launched a number of grant funded programmes. Failure to have an up to date relevant strategy will disadvantage the council and Halton based organisations or artists in applications.

7.0 **EQUALITY AND DIVERSITY ISSUES**

7.1 The Arts Strategy will comply with all relevant equality requirements.

8.0 **LIST OF BACKGROUND PAPERS UNDER SECTION 100D OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972**

Document	Place of Inspection	Contact Officer
Arts Strategy 2008	Electronic copy	John Hatton

ARTS POLICY AND STRATEGY REVIEW 2012 DRAFT

CONTENTS – update once completed edit

Executive Summary		3
Part 1:	Introduction and Context	
	1.1 Introduction	5
	1.2 What do we mean by 'the arts'?	5
	1.3 National and regional policy for the arts	6
Part 2:	Review	
	2.1 Overview: Arts provision in the Borough	7
	2.2 Commitment by the Borough Council	8
	2.3 The Brindley	9
	2.4 Arts development work	10
	2.5 Other Council services	11
	2.6 External partnerships	16
	2.7 Independent practitioners	18
	2.8 Constraints and opportunities	20
	2.9 Building on current achievements	22
Part 3:	Arts Policy	
	3.1 The purpose of a policy and strategy	23
	3.2 The corporate policy context	23
	3.3 Aspiration and Policy	24
	3.4 Strategic themes and objectives	25
Part 4:	Strategy	
	4.1 Theme 1: A healthy community	27
	4.2 Theme 2: Urban renewal and regeneration	29
	4.3 Theme 3: Employment, learning and skills	30
	4.4 Theme 4: Arts opportunities for children and young people	31
	4.5 Theme 5: A safer community	32
	4.6 Theme 6: Leadership and partnerships	33
Appendix		
	1 Proposals for supporting creative industries development	34
	2 A summary of national and regional policy for the arts	37
	3 Summary of user group consultation comments	40
	4 List of consultations	42

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Introduction

This is an Executive Summary of a review of Halton Borough Council's arts policy and strategy. It is a qualitative review, based on consultation with staff and service users, and an independent appraisal of the work of the arts service.

The purpose of the report is:

- to recognise and commend good practice
- to understand the relationship between arts development work and the Council's wider corporate objectives
- to identify areas for service development and improvement
- to suggest areas where cross-service working can be strengthened
- to help the Arts Development Team in developing their action plan and business plan for the next phase of arts development work in Halton.

Overview

The Borough of Halton has some important strengths in the arts, including its award-winning venue The Brindley, the successes of the enthusiastic and dedicated arts team in encouraging so many people to take part in the arts in different ways, the role of the arts in local schools and increasingly with younger children in the Children's Centres, and in the growing contribution by independent artists and practitioners attracted to work here.

Interest in the arts has undoubtedly grown since the Borough Council had the confidence and vision to create The Brindley. Nevertheless in an area without a strong local tradition of taking part in the arts, with relatively sparse public transport links across the Borough in the evenings, and the river crossing even now seen as a barrier by some people, there is a continuing challenge in encouraging people to have the confidence to find out what they're good at and what they might become interested in.

While the value of arts in contributing to the quality of life is increasingly understood and accepted, there are still many people who have unequal opportunities to enjoy taking part in and experiencing the arts. The challenge – and the reward – for the Borough Council is to support an arts development programme which encourages people to develop their creativity, and in doing so to achieve some of the other community benefits, as outlined in this report.

Policy

In renewing its arts strategy the Borough Council's aspiration is that:

- the value of the arts will be recognised right across the work of the Council
- the importance of the arts as a key driver of the quality of life will be acknowledged in corporate strategies
- the Council will support and encourage high quality arts activities which have integrity, and in which imagination, originality and innovation are valued.

The policy of the Council is to develop and support opportunities for everybody in Halton:

- to be able – and encouraged – to take part in and experience high quality arts activity, and
- to be able to share in the social, educational and economic benefits which the arts can offer.

This policy is delivered not only through the Arts Development Team and the work of The Brindley, but also through other services including schools and other services for children and young people, libraries.

Strategic themes

The arts strategy will:

1. contribute to **a healthy Halton**, through arts projects in health-care settings, arts development activities with specific target groups (such as older people) and promoting healthy lifestyles through dance.
2. contribute to **Halton's urban renewal**, through managing The Brindley as a creative focus for the Borough, through outreach and neighbourhood projects which contribute to community regeneration, and through developing a strategic approach to public art so as to promote sense of identity and pride of place and contribute to the quality of design.
3. support **the employment, learning and skills of those within Halton**, through building local talent and nurturing the growth of the independent artists sector and independent arts groups.
4. contribute **opportunities for Halton's children and young people**, through formal and informal learning opportunities and a range of participatory arts activities.
5. contribute to **a safer Halton**, through arts projects which animate the community and promote community cohesion, diversionary programmes for children and young people, and arts projects which contribute to strategies to counter drug and substances misuse or which tackle specific issues of offending behaviours.
6. provide **leadership** and develop **partnerships**, through maintaining and developing a strategic framework for the arts in Halton, developing internal partnerships and collaborations with services of the Council and developing external partnerships and collaborations with other agencies.

The strategy sets out the workstreams to be implemented to deliver each of these themes, and the improvement outcomes that will be expected.

PART 1: INTRODUCTION AND CONTEXT

This section introduces the report and summarises the national and regional context.

1.1 What do we mean by 'the arts'?

The arts are understood within this strategy to encompass:

- the **performing arts**, including music, dance, drama and other performance
- the **visual arts**, including crafts and public art
- the **literary arts**, including literature, poetry, reading, writing and the spoken word
- **media arts**, including film, video, broadcasting, digital creativity and the creative use of communications technology, such as creating material for use on social networking sites.

1.2 National and regional policy for the arts

Overall national policy for the cultural sector is led by the **Department for Culture, Media and Sport** (DCMS). The Department's aim is to improve the quality of life for all through cultural and sporting activities, to support the pursuit of excellence and to champion the tourism, creative and leisure industries. DCMS aims to maximise the contribution the arts sector makes to its strategic priorities of:

- children and young people
- communities
- the economy
- delivery.

Most of DCMS's support for the arts is channelled through **Arts Council England**, which works "to get great art to everyone by championing, developing and investing in artistic experiences that enrich people's lives".

Arts Council England wants more people to experience and be inspired by the arts, irrespective of where they live or their social, educational or financial circumstances. Funding streams to enable this are developed and Arts Development's role is to access, apply or identify the appropriate partner / organisation to do so.

Any such funding received and benefitting Halton residents will be matched with an exit strategy, developed by the Arts Team in partnership with participants, to ensure the legacy and transition from public funding is sustainable and expectations and ambitions are reached.

PART 2: REVIEW

This section provides an overview commentary on the arts on Halton.

2.1 Overview: Arts provision in the Borough

The main **strengths** are:

- The Brindley, as a focal point for arts activity across the Borough
- the arts development team, and the passion, integrity, commitment and resourcefulness which they bring to their programme of work
- the role of the arts in the Borough's schools and increasingly in the Children's Centres, with the educational value of the arts firmly on the agenda of the Children & Young People's Service
- the way in which many other Council services use the arts, in partnership with the arts team, as a way of helping them deliver their services
- the growing contribution of independent practitioners, many of whom have been drawn here by the leadership of the arts team and The Brindley
- the commitment by the Borough Council to using the arts as one of the means by which the quality of life is improved for all residents, contributing to corporate objectives such as educational aspiration and achievement, health and well-being and urban renewal.

The main **weaknesses** are:

- the relatively small and under-developed scale of professional arts activity other than that directly managed or supported by the Council
- limited inward investment in the arts, and a limited range of independent partners, meaning there is a considerable dependence on the continuing support of the Borough Council
- a dependence on artists and arts organisations from further afield to complement the contribution made by locally-based artists

The strategy will build on the existing strengths, and seek to make progress in addressing some of the perceived weaknesses.

The work of the arts development team has enabled many people to take part in creative activities, and the bold stroke of setting up The Brindley has provided an enormous boost to local cultural opportunities, but this needs to be understood within a local context of relatively low levels of activity and a lack of critical mass caused in part by limited local traditions of cultural engagement.

While Halton Borough Council is ambitious and determined to improve opportunities for local people, it is constrained by the relatively small size of the Borough, and a degree of weakness caused both by the physical division by the River Mersey and its ambiguous identity as being aligned to the greater Merseyside conurbation while retaining some residual affinity with the old identities of Cheshire and Lancashire.

2.2 Commitment by the Borough Council

Within Halton Borough Council there is understanding and support at both political and management levels for the role of the arts. There is recognition that the arts provide opportunities to achieve a range of corporate objectives.



2.3 The Brindley

Since its opening in 2004 The Brindley has established itself as one of the best venues of its size in the North West, with a great reputation for the quality and range of its programme, for imaginative arts projects involving local communities and for nurturing and developing artists. It has been a great success from many perspectives:

- it has raised aspirations and become symbolic of a confident future for the Borough, winning awards and raising the reputation of Halton across the region and beyond
- it has provided a creative focus for the Borough, a focus for audience development, and is generally liked by users and is one of the best venues of its scale in the North West region
- arts development work and professional performances and exhibitions are well integrated, so the venue is much stronger than in places where the venue and the arts development work are separated
- the programme serves many different market niches while maintaining an integrity in the originality and quality of work it presents
- it has created new audiences through its programming and participatory events
- the wide range of classes and workshops provide structured opportunities to take part regularly for children, teenagers and older people; for example, young dancers who regularly attend The Brindley for creative dance classes have local, regional and even national opportunities in dance performance
- there is evidence that it is attracting audiences from further afield who are attracted by the programme, the venue itself and its location, and its attractiveness as an alternative proposition to attending large scale venues in Liverpool or Manchester. **INCLUDE STATS HERE**

At the same time it is clear that:

- there is a continuing reluctance by some people in the Borough, especially from the north bank of the river, to travel to Runcorn
- access by public transport, while excellent during the day from all parts of the Borough, is weak in the evenings
- the task of raising The Brindley's profile locally and regionally needs to continue.

While The Brindley is a magnificent achievement, it is not possible for one single venue to meet all the Borough's needs. In particular:

- *there is a continuing demand for a more informal music venue and for rehearsal spaces – Queens Hall studio*
- *any plans for managed workspaces or artists' studios for fledgling creative industries would need to be developed at other locations – e.g. Hazlehurst studio's*
- *there will continue to be a need for arts activities distributed around the Borough in community locations for people who are unable or reluctant to travel to The Brindley.*

2.4 Arts development work

The Borough has a team of **arts development officers** who work with service users, artists and practitioners and external stakeholders and are well connected with regional and national developments in their fields. They have initiated a wide range of work for many different target user groups. User comments on the team are overwhelmingly positive (see Appendix 3). Core services including advice, information, support of voluntary and professional artists and arts groups, grants schemes and help in securing funding from other sources are all highly valued.

The work of the arts development team is well **integrated** with the programming of workshops, classes, performances and exhibitions at The Brindley, while still having a distinct identity through a range of collaborations and off-site projects. With specialisms in drama, music and visual arts the current team offers a range of expertise and contacts which gives them a solid and respected base for their work with artists, while they have all extended beyond their own core strengths to cover other areas of work.

Although some local authorities have moved away from the model of having an arts team based around areas of artform expertise, in favour of the posts being structured around the target user groups, there is no reason why the present model should not continue to serve Halton well given that the officers as a team focus on the Council's **corporate priorities**.

2.5 Other Council services

The Arts Development Team has excellent links across many other Council services, providing advice and contacts to services which use the arts as part of their delivery.

- **Schools and Children's Centres:** The Borough has the highest proportion of schools holding the **Artsmark** award of all local authorities in England.

Schools in the Borough have benefited from the work of **professional artists** and practitioners enriching the opportunities they provide, through projects such as writers' residencies and workshops by artists visiting the Borough. They are networked through the Arts Education Network; now co-ordinated by the Arts Development Lead.

Each year the Borough's high schools and special schools with secondary provision, and the college have the opportunity to exhibit at the Brindley through the Inspired Responses programme. Managed by the visual arts officer, this project creates artist residency opportunities to develop skills in students and teachers.

The arts team has links with the children's centres, providing expertise and advice on professional practitioners for activities such as early years dance and movement programmes. These centres also provide access to the families as well as to young children and can help open up wider community opportunities.

The Arts Development Team Leader (Claire Bigley) is an EYP (Early Years Professional) with the new national Early Years Framework there are many

opportunities for planned and structured use of arts activities and programmes with early years children.

Youth work: A good percentage of the work of the arts team is focused on young people. In autumn 2011 the arts development team and CRMZ worked in partnership to bring in artists to work with young people at their Widnes venue to create a small exhibition and activities as part of the national Big Draw programme. This work engaged around 50 young people over 5 days in new activities. The arts officers continue to work with the youth service at HRMZ and CRMZ to support work with artists and creative projects.

- **Libraries:** Many library initiatives promote reading, writing, poetry and literature in partnership with The Brindley, events for the National Year of Reading, National Storytelling Week and other such National activities. Libraries are used as venues for reading groups and for arts activities such as exhibitions at Kingsway and elsewhere, regular classes in writing at Halton Lea and in arts, crafts and media at Widnes. The use of the newly opened Runcorn Library (2012) will see this relationship develop further; with an application to Arts Council North West for a Writer in Residence for 1 year. This post will be shared across The Brindley and Runcorn Library; whilst also enhancing Borough wide literature activity.

- **Community Development:** The arts are one of ways in which the Borough's community development officers can engage with their local communities. The work of community development officers provides channels for reaching people who may not be users of The Brindley, through their local contacts and networks, their expertise and the resources of the community centres, and for finding out what people are interested in and how to provide 'entry points' for initial engagement.
- **Social Services:** The contribution that the arts can make to providing high quality experiences for people receiving social care is increasingly understood and documented nationally, and projects are now flourishing in Halton.

Social services are developing a more systematic and strategic role in supporting the use of the arts as a way of improving social care.

2.6 External partnerships

The arts service is well connected locally and across the region. The individual officers are active in various professional fora which gives them a national context for their work.

Regional and sub-regional: Halton has links with Arts Council England at a regional level and with the Merseyside authorities through membership of the Merseyside Arts Partnership.

Art Merseywide, the joint open art exhibition project organised by the Greater Merseyside visual arts and gallery officers is now entering its third season, this year exhibiting 60 works from across the region at the Liverpool Academy of the Arts this autumn to coincide with the Liverpool Biennial.

The Brindley is also a key partner in The North West Children's Theatre Network; currently chaired by Halton's Arts Development Lead. The organisations have signed up to a consortium of promoters in the North West Region, with a commitment to programming high quality children's theatre. The 4 original members is set to grow to 12 by 2014 with the support of ACE funding and guidance.

Heritage: There are good arts links with Norton Priory Museum and Walled Gardens. The recently launched website www.haltoncollections.org.uk is the culmination of a 3 year project, managed by the visual arts development officer and bringing together the local, social and civic collections from Halton Borough Council, Halton Libraries, Norton Priory Museum Trust and Catalyst Science Discovery Centre in one virtual space. Supported by £45k of Heritage Lottery funding this project has ensured access to over 2,500 objects and photographs pertaining to the borough's history.

2.7 Independent practitioners

- **Support for professional artists:** Artists and practitioners have been attracted by the excellent facilities at The Brindley and the supportive and encouraging environment promoted by the arts development team. Practical assistance with issues such as rehearsal space, marketing of events and links with schools has helped develop the viability of a professional freelance career for a number of artists and groups.

Networking: Cultivate is a voluntary network of cultural groups and individuals who want to connect, inspire, share ideas and make things happen in Halton. We are a not for profit group, who want to help to create a real sense of place and a good quality of life for others and ourselves, by getting all ages and abilities together to make and celebrate our area's culture.

- **Support for voluntary sector arts groups:** Local voluntary sector arts groups are supported and encouraged by the Council including using the facilities at The Brindley where appropriate. Ensure that support is given to help organisations improve or become sustainable.
- **Building a career in the creative industries:** The encouragement and advice of the arts team is crucial in the development of the Creative Industries in Halton. Empowering local artists and communities through access to funding, giving a voice on a regional and national scale will also enable an ambitious and thriving sector to grow.

The Brindley has provided a creative focus for practitioners and is the hub of arts activity and programme currently. For the Arts to develop further within Halton their needs to be a greater infrastructure, independent work spaces, studios and creative outlets for businesses to grow. It is hoped the newly formed collective of local artists ' Hazlehurst Craft Studios CIC' will be the first stage in this process. A group of artists from Runcorn and Widnes who came together in autumn 2011 to form a Community Interest Company. Their aim is to provide affordable managed workspace for artists / makers from the borough and its environs, but also to encourage the artistic development of individuals and groups from the local community, through workshops, courses and drop-in activities in the studios' community space. Building on their existing links with community art groups, they aim to develop a creative hub in Runcorn Old Town, where they have secured the upper floor of a building on a long term lease from Halton Borough Council Property Services. An initial one year application has been made to Art Council England, who suggested support for a further two years, if the project is successful.

2.8 Constraints and opportunities

The role of local authorities in the arts is discretionary, not mandatory, and therefore the arts tend to be vulnerable, especially when budgets are under pressure. However an arts strategy which both responds to and stimulates local need and demand is essential as part of the community leadership role of local authorities.

The arts are intrinsically valuable, and this has been reaffirmed in recent statements by both Arts Council England and by the Department for Culture Media and Sport, after a decade in which the arts have been promoted largely for their instrumental benefits in delivering some of the great policy themes such as social inclusion, educational progress and economic development. The arts policy needs to recognise both the value of facilitating access to high quality arts provision for all people in the borough, and the importance of utilising the opportunities presented by the arts to help achieve other things.

Some **general constraints** on local authority arts services include:

- the continuing restrictions on local authority finances and the need to find 'efficiency' savings year on year
- the relative weakness nationally for the arts, compared with other cultural services, in terms of an under-developed performance measurement framework, reflecting the great diversity of approaches across the country.

Some **specific constraints** having a local effect include:

- despite its acknowledgement of the value of the arts Halton Borough Council is a relatively small authority with many pressing demands on its budgets
- the independent arts sector in the borough is relatively small
- the limited investment in Halton by the Arts Council, following the expiry of the funding towards the Brindley, with no regularly funded organisations in the borough, and Arts Council three-year spending plans fixed for 2008-2011
- the challenge of securing the sustainability of work of proven value when fixed term project funding expires.

There are also significant opportunities for developing the arts during the next few years, including:

1. For **young people**:

- scope for further work in response to interest by the Arts Council in promoting the *Arts Award* as an accredited award for young people's individual achievements¹
- scope for new patterns of after school hours access to arts and cultural activities in response to interest by Government in promoting the concept of 'cultural entitlement' for all young people
- the opportunity to develop a more coherent policy for youth arts as Halton develops an integrated approach to supporting young people.

2. For **the wider community**:

¹ The Brindley is an approved centre for the young people's *Arts Award*, and the officers in the Arts Development Team have had training as assessors. A pilot project will see a number of young people working for the Bronze level award by April 2009.

- opportunities for more strategic approaches to using arts activities in social care situations such as in improving the quality of life of older people
 - opportunities through the arts to improve the quality of life for people with disabilities or health or mental health issues
3. For investment in **the physical infrastructure**:
- scope to incorporate public art into major new capital investments, especially with infrastructure projects such as Widnes Waterfront, Runcorn Canal Quarter and the £390m Mersey Gateway new bridge

2.9 Building on current achievements

The arts matter, to the people of Halton and to the Borough Council, for the contribution they make to social, educational, economic and environmental aspects of quality of life.

With an increased emphasis for local authorities on *outcomes*, rather than *outputs*, the next phase of arts development in the Borough will need to establish more consistent evidence about *impact* and *'value added'*, especially in helping to achieve:

- **equality**, with the arts contributing to efforts to 'close the gap' and raise the level of aspirations and achievements
- **cohesion**, building sense of place and contributing to pride of place, helping to unify the Borough despite its different neighbourhood traditions, and improving the cultural opportunities available to all people living here
- a **higher profile**, so that people living in the Borough have an increased awareness and appreciation of the arts and creative opportunities that are available, and see them as being accessible, with a lowering of perceived entry barriers and a wider profile across Merseyside and the region for Halton as a borough with a range of high quality arts development work in terms of venue provision and off-site community-based work.

PART 3: ARTS POLICY

3.1 The corporate policy context

The Borough Council's **vision** is that:

"Halton will be a thriving and vibrant Borough where people can learn and develop their skills; enjoy a good quality of life with good health; a high quality, modern urban environment; the opportunity for all to fulfil their potential; greater wealth and equality, sustained by a thriving business community; and safer, stronger and more attractive neighbourhoods".

The Council's **key priorities**, as set out in the Corporate Plan, are:

1. a healthy Halton
2. Halton's urban renewal
3. employment, learning and skills in Halton
4. children and young people in Halton
5. a safer Halton
6. corporate effectiveness and business efficiency.

These provide a **framework for the arts strategy** through the following themes, reflecting the Council's key priorities:

1. a healthy community
2. urban renewal and regeneration
3. employment, learning and skills
4. arts opportunities for children and young people
5. a safer community
6. leadership and partnerships

with a focus throughout on **improvement outcomes**.

3.2 Aspiration and Policy

The Council's **aspiration** for the arts is that:

- the value of arts will be recognised right across the work of the Council, both through the work of the Arts Development Team and through other services
- the importance of arts as a key driver of the quality of life will be recognised and represented in corporate strategies
- the Council will support and encourage high quality arts activities which have integrity, and in which imagination, originality and innovation are valued.

The **policy** of the Council is to develop and support opportunities for everybody in Halton:

- to be able – and encouraged – to take part in and experience high quality arts activity, and
- to be able to share in the social, educational and economic benefits which the arts can offer.

This policy is delivered through key services provided by the Arts Development Team:

- strategic leadership of arts development across the Borough
- partnerships with professional and voluntary sector providers, regional bodies and other agencies
- managing The Brindley and its programme, including outreach, as the Borough's flagship arts venue
- commissioning, managing or supporting arts development work
- providing information, advice, support and networking to the arts sector, other services of the Council and to external partners

Arts are also provided or facilitated through other Borough Council services including:

- libraries
- schools, children's centres, the work of the curriculum advisers and other services for children and young people

3.4 Strategic themes and objectives

The strategic objectives are grouped around six themes, with clear objectives and a focus on outcomes:

Theme	Objective	Outcomes
1. A healthy community	To contribute to community health and well-being through: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> arts projects in health-care settings arts development activities with specific target groups (such as older people and those with mental health issues) promoting healthy lifestyles through taking part in dance encouraging increased participation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> More use of social and cultural approaches as an alternative to medical or pharmacological interventions. Engaging new users and increased participation by target groups. Increased participation in activities such as dance.
2. Urban renewal and regeneration	To contribute to urban renewal and regeneration through: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> managing The Brindley as a creative focus for the Borough and for its role in wider community regeneration outreach and neighbourhood projects which contribute to community regeneration developing a strategic approach to public art, to promote sense of identity and pride of place and contribute to the quality of design and urban renewal/regeneration. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sustainability and viability of The Brindley. Increased participation in target neighbourhoods. Environmental and public realm improvements.
3. Employment, learning and skills	To support employment, learning and skills in the creative sector through: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> building local talent nurturing the growth of the independent artists sector and independent arts groups. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capacity building and a stronger independent sector. Economic benefits with the growth of a sustainable pool of arts organisations and artists.
4. Arts opportunities for children and young people	To provide opportunities for children and young people through: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> formal and informal learning opportunities a range of participatory arts activities. Funding opportunities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased participation by children and young people. Increased aspirations and achievements.

continued...

<p>5. A safer community</p>	<p>Contribute to a safer community through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • arts projects which animate the community and promote community cohesion • diversionary programmes for children and young people • arts projects which contribute to strategies to counter drug and substances misuse • arts projects which tackle specific issues of offending behaviours. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Joined-up approach to reaching target audiences, working with other services to focus on identified priority areas. • Increased community cohesion. • More positive attitudes and reduced anti-social behaviour
<p>6. Leadership and partnerships</p>	<p>provide leadership and develop partnerships through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • maintaining and developing a strategic framework for the arts in Halton • developing internal partnerships and collaborations with services of the Council • developing external partnerships and collaborations with other agencies. • Empowering local artists to shape arts infrastructure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effective application of people and financial resources to achieve strategic outcomes. • Effective partnerships internally and externally including the arts having a voice in the LSP. • Raised profile for the arts service.

PART 4: STRATEGY

This section sets out more detail about the strategies to deliver on each of the themes.

4.1 Theme 1: A healthy community

The arts service will contribute to community health and well-being through:

- arts projects in health-care settings
- arts development activities with specific target groups such as older people
- promoting healthy lifestyles through taking part in arts classes
- encouraging increased participation.

Improvement outcomes will include:

- more use of social and cultural approaches as an alternative to medical or pharmacological interventions
- engaging new users, through increased participation by target groups
- increased participation in activities such as dance.

*Specific workstreams will include: **As this is updated annually is it needed in Arts Strategy????***

1. **Arts and health**, including:

- Take part in sub-regional initiatives through the Merseyside Arts Partnership to develop arts and health work as an inter-authority initiative, supported by Arts Council.
- Explore further collaborations relating to the key priorities of mental health, ageing, young people's issues (including teenage pregnancy, sexual health and drugs awareness), men's health and training for arts and health staff.
- More arts projects in partnership with the Drugs & Alcohol Action Team (such as the recent *High Risk* video project).
- Explore the scope for establishing a part-time co-ordinator to develop arts in health opportunities in partnership with the PCT.

2. **Active lifestyles**, including:

- Offer a range of youth dance programmes including regular groups and classes at The Brindley.
- Maintain the dance development programme, at The Brindley, at off-site locations and with other services e.g. Children's Centres.
- Continue to develop programmes such as Fit 2 Dance and Years Ahead projects (for the over 50s), delivered at several locations.
- Develop dance programmes for people at risk of obesity, so that people can choose dance as well as sport, in collaboration with Sports Development and health referrals.

3. Audience development², including:

- Use research and market intelligence to identify and understand more about who the users are, who are the non-participants and where the gaps are.
- Devise and implement specific initiatives to encourage first-time audiences and non-participants to attend or take part in events at The Brindley.
- Identify areas of low take-up (evidenced through Active People survey), find out more about needs of specific neighbourhoods, then devise and implement specific initiatives to encourage new involvement, through arts development outreach projects and joint initiatives with Sports Development and Community Development.
- Devise and implement specific initiatives to engage more young adults, including different marketing aimed at the needs of different age groups.
- Further develop joint projects with libraries.

² Note: 'audience development' means engaging people in activities as participants as well as audiences, at The Brindley and at other locations, with the objectives of involving new users, from a broader range of people, and of attracting more frequent and varied participation by people who are already users.

4.2 Theme 2: Urban renewal and regeneration

The arts service will contribute to urban renewal and regeneration through:

- managing The Brindley as a creative focus for the Borough and for its role in wider community arts regeneration
- outreach and neighbourhood projects which contribute to community regeneration
- developing a strategic approach to public art, to promote sense of identity and pride of place and contribute to the quality of design and urban renewal/regeneration.

Improvement outcomes will include:

- sustainability and viability of The Brindley as a creative focus
- increased participation in target neighbourhoods
- environmental and public realm improvements.

Specific workstreams will include:

1. **The Brindley**, including:
 - Carry out market research (specific and local, not generalised) to understand the views of users and non-users, to help shape audience development strategies (*as Theme 1 Action i*).
 - Use market research data (e.g. ACORN data and findings of Active People survey) to target people in areas where there are currently low levels of participation (*as Theme 1 Action k*).
 - Promote the venue more strongly within and beyond the Borough both to enhance the reputation of the Borough and to help the venue's sustainability by contributing to earned income. Explore scope for an 'ambassador' style system for local print distribution to neighbourhoods
 - Audience development work (*as Theme 1.3*).
2. **Outreach work**, including:
 - Devise and implement development work, with other cultural services in the borough, through specific interventions in neighbourhoods or localities where there are low levels of participation, e.g. the 'super output areas' identified in the work on Neighbourhood Management (such as the pilot project in the West Bank area of Widnes).
3. **Public art**, including:
 - Work to achieve a strategic influence with the Council's Environment Department (which includes Planning, Economic Regeneration, Major Projects and Highways); this may include the possibility of a specialist post on a part-time or freelance basis to provide expert advice.
 - Advocate for the adoption and implementation of the Planning Guidance Note and Commissioning Guide.
 - Seek to influence the Building Schools for the Future (BSF) programme with conceptual thinking about the community role of new schools as well as arts interventions in their design.
 - Seek to influence major infrastructure projects such as Widnes Waterfront, Runcorn Canal Quarter, the Mersey Gateway new bridge and new health facilities planned for the Borough.

4.3 Theme 3: Employment, learning and skills

The arts service will support employment, learning and skills in the creative sector through:

- building local talent
- nurturing the growth of the independent artists sector and independent arts groups in the Borough.
- Identifying funding to enable infrastructure / employment opportunities

Improvement outcomes will include:

- capacity building and a stronger independent sector
- economic benefits with the growth of a sustainable pool of arts organisations and artists.
- Enable the draw down of funding; not solely reliant on Arts Team

Specific workstreams will include:

1. Supporting professional and voluntary **artists and practitioners**, including:
 - Continue to offer a small grants and a small training grants programme.
 - Offer advice and assistance to artists, including linking them to other sources of support.
 - Improve networking for artists and arts groups, specifically by reviving and re-launching the Raw Arts website, and extending its range as a platform and showcase for local independent practitioners, to strengthen its value as a resource, including as a source of information to assist other Council services, providing a directory of artists and arts groups (with supporting information such as examples of work undertaken and names of independent referees). Complement this with a regular e-circular to practitioners to channel information, news, commissioning opportunities etc.
 - Strengthen support for the voluntary sector through the development of a DVD and website by the Cultural Partnership to make the voluntary sector more visible.
 - Build on existing links with neighbouring initiatives for the benefit of local artists and venues (e.g. across Merseyside and in Cheshire).
2. Supporting the **creative industries**, including:
 - Develop signposting and advice on progression routes.
 - Offer work experience and mentoring for emerging artists and practitioners.
 - Consider strategic alliance with agencies (such as ACME or CRISP) or with other local authorities, to counter the limited capacity for creative industries support.
 - Develop more formalised links with Riverside College: to collaborate on structured and planned workshops and artists' residencies, placements and practical experience to help local students considering a career in arts, crafts or media work, including technical support work; to facilitate opportunities for more advanced students to gain experience in working on community projects; and to maintain more regular contact between arts team and college staff, contributing the arts team's knowledge of the industry and the arts professions.
 - Look at possible opportunities through Building Schools for the Future to establish creative studios which could host artists in schools and act as incubator spaces for emerging creative businesses.

4.4 Theme 4: Arts opportunities for children and young people

The arts service will contribute opportunities for children and young people through:

- formal and informal learning opportunities for children and young people
- a range of participatory arts activities for children and young people.

Improvement outcomes will include:

- increased participation by children and young people
- increased aspirations and achievements.

Specific workstreams will include:

1. **Early years** work, including:
 - Develop the role of the arts team as a resource able to provide specialist advice to staff in CYPANs and the Children's Centres, and advising them on use of artists who are potentially available to deliver work.
 - Work through CYPANs and the Children's Centres to reach families with family learning and inter-generational work.
2. Supporting **education**, including:
 - Develop the role of the arts team as a resource able to provide specialist advice to curriculum advisers, headteachers and schools, advising them on use of artists who are potentially available to deliver work, contributing to CPD and INSET for teachers, and supporting the work of encouraging schools to apply for the *Artsmark* award and helping them to meet and maintain the standards of the programme, especially in areas such as dance where support is especially needed.
 - Plan workshops, residencies, exhibitions and performances which support schools' curricular needs, both through the programme of The Brindley and through links with artists and arts organisations.
3. Supporting **youth arts**, including:
 - Pilot projects to promote the Young People's Arts Award as an accredited award, with the Positive Activities group.
 - Work with the Borough's other cultural services towards the 'five hour offer' and the extended school day.
 - Help to develop a Council-wide Youth Arts Policy as a statement of entitlement and service availability, working with the integrated Youth Service and with young people.
 - Develop further opportunities through which young people can devise their own programming, building on the experience of H208 which included work run and managed by young people.
 - In response to young people's interest, develop film/video/media work and digital creativity, both at The Brindley and in conjunction with venues such as Riverside College with specialist facilities and equipment, and at new school buildings planned through BSF as part of wider community use and access.
 - Support proposals to establish a dedicated youth facility in Widnes which could increase the creative opportunities available to young people in the northern part of the borough.

4.5 Theme 5: A safer community

The arts service will contribute to a safer community through:

- arts projects which animate the community and promote community cohesion
- diversionary programmes for children and young people
- arts projects which contribute to strategies to counter drug and substances misuse
- arts projects which tackle specific issues of offending behaviours

Improvement outcomes will include:

- a joined-up approach to reaching target audiences, working together with other services to focus on identified priority areas
- increased community cohesion
- more positive attitudes and reduced anti-social behaviour.

Specific workstreams will include:

1. **Community engagement**, including:
 - Make specific provision for small-scale touring events in rural communities (such as Prestonbrook) by buying into other touring schemes, but discontinue attempts to provide a borough-wide touring network.
 - Support neighbourhood projects which promote a sense of local community, through outreach work such as neighbourhood events, projects and community learning initiatives.
 - Reach non-committed audiences through community animation projects in parks, open spaces and public spaces in town centre locations.
2. **Diversionary programmes** for children and young people, including:
 - Integrate arts and creative activities into Splash programmes to offer out-of-school creative opportunities.
 - Devise and implement projects which promote achievement and positive images and roles for young people.
 - Devise and implement projects which tackle specific offending behaviours e.g. vehicle crime by young people.
 - Continue to offer out-of-school creative opportunities for children and young people at The Brindley.

Arts projects in partnership with the Drugs and Alcohol Action Team and with the PCT (see Theme 1) will also contribute to the theme of a safer community.

4.6 Theme 6: Leadership and partnerships

The arts service will provide leadership and develop partnerships through:

- maintaining and developing a strategic framework for the arts in Halton
- developing internal partnerships and collaborations with services of the Council
- developing external partnerships and collaborations with other agencies.

Improvement outcomes will include:

- effective application of people and financial resources to achieve strategic outcomes
- effective partnerships internally and externally including the arts having a voice in the LSP
- raised profile for the arts service.

Specific workstreams will include:

1. **Advocacy**, including:
 - Work on evidence systems and PIs to ensure that impact and outcomes can be demonstrated and communicated; perhaps commissioned evaluation.
 - Consistent advocacy and profile-raising by the arts team to increase awareness and understanding of the range and impact of the arts development work. Prepare and publish new brochure; implement an improved website with more information about the service offering; more interviews, articles for publications, and presentations at conferences etc.
 - Promote and encourage artistic quality and integrity through the work of the arts team and their imagination, originality and innovation, and nurture artists and alleviate their tendency to isolation.
2. **Working together internally**, including:
 - Develop the arts team's offering as an in-house consultancy resource including sharing information, contacts, ideas and advice with other services. Much of this can be made available on the improved website.
 - Develop the working relationships with the CYPANs in the borough.
 - Ensure that the contribution the arts make to achieving corporate objectives is recognised in the LAA (e.g. role of arts in contributing to health and well-being).
 - Further development of cross-service working, and with improved planning mechanisms.
3. **Working together externally**, including:
 - Explore the potential for links with other nearby local authorities, for joint work on e.g. health, creative industries and in other areas where co-operation or joint action would be beneficial to Halton.
 - Support Norton Priory Museum in its ambitious expansion plans which will offer enhanced arts opportunities as well as strengthening the Borough's heritage offer.
 - Play an active role in Merseyside Arts Partnership and ensure Halton is able to benefit from sub-regional initiatives.
 - Maintain and develop the relationship with Arts Council England North West, and advocate on behalf of artists and arts work in the borough.
 - Maintain and develop the links with other regional and national networks, support structures and professional bodies.



Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted

Document is Restricted